



CAMBRIDGE  
UNIVERSITY PRESS



CAMBRIDGE ENGLISH  
Language Assessment  
Part of the University of Cambridge

www.frenchenglish.ru

# Cambridge English

# EMPOWER

WORKBOOK  
WITH ANSWERS

# C1



Robert McLarty



# Cambridge English

# EMPOWER

**ADVANCED  
WORKBOOK  
WITH ANSWERS**

**C1**

**Robert McLarty**

# Contents

| Unit 1 Language                        |   |  | Page |
|--|---|--|------|
| 1A                                     | I learned French entirely by ear                            | <b>Grammar</b> Adverbs and adverbial phrases<br><b>Vocabulary</b> Language learning; Noun forms  | 4    |
| 1B                                     | Language has been constantly evolving                       | <b>Grammar</b> The perfect aspect<br><b>Vocabulary</b> Describing changes  | 5    |
| 1C                                     | Something along those lines                                 | <b>Useful language</b> Expressing yourself in an inexact way   | 6    |
| 1D                                     | You're spot on there!                                       | <b>Reading</b> A blog<br><b>Writing skills</b> Expressing opinions<br><b>Writing</b> A comment on a blog   | 7    |
| <b>Reading and listening extension</b> |   | <b>Reading</b> Could you learn physics in Japanese?  | 8    |
| <b>Review and extension</b>            |   | <b>WORDPOWER</b> Idioms: Body parts  | 9    |
| Unit 2 Going to extremes               |   |  |      |
| 2A                                     | I would happily have stayed longer                          | <b>Grammar</b> Comparison<br><b>Vocabulary</b> Multi-word verbs: Social interaction  | 10   |
| 2B                                     | I'll be jumping from 900 metres                             | <b>Grammar</b> Intentions and arrangements<br><b>Vocabulary</b> Verbs of movement  | 11   |
| 2C                                     | Don't get so wound up about it                              | <b>Useful language</b> Giving advice   | 12   |
| 2D                                     | Less adventurous students could try paintball               | <b>Reading</b> A report<br><b>Writing skills</b> Reports; Linking: contrast and concession<br><b>Writing</b> A report  | 13   |
| <b>Reading and listening extension</b> |   | <b>Reading</b> Sensory play<br><b>Listening</b> A loss of sense of smell   | 14   |
| <b>Review and extension</b>            |   | <b>WORDPOWER</b> Idioms: Movement  | 15   |
| Unit 3 Travel and adventure            |   |  |      |
| 3A                                     | Never have I had such a rewarding experience                | <b>Grammar</b> Inversion<br><b>Vocabulary</b> Wealth and poverty   | 16   |
| 3B                                     | I was expecting it to be tough                              | <b>Grammar</b> Future in the past; Narrative tenses<br><b>Vocabulary</b> Landscape features  | 17   |
| 3C                                     | To cut a long story short                                   | <b>Useful language</b> Paraphrasing and summarising  | 18   |
| 3D                                     | The view is stunning  | <b>Reading</b> A review<br><b>Writing skills</b> Descriptive language; Writing briefly<br><b>Writing</b> A review of a recent trip                               | 19   |
| <b>Reading and listening extension</b> |   | <b>Reading</b> An expedition doctor<br><b>Listening</b> Adventurous women  | 20   |
| <b>Review and extension</b>            |   | <b>WORDPOWER</b> Idioms: Landscapes  | 21   |
| Unit 4 Consciousness                   |   |  |      |
| 4A                                     | That little voice in your head                              | <b>Grammar</b> Noun phrases<br><b>Vocabulary</b> Instinct and reason   | 22   |
| 4B                                     | He got himself locked in a shed                             | <b>Grammar</b> <i>have / get</i> passives<br><b>Vocabulary</b> Memory  | 23   |
| 4C                                     | I see where you're coming from                              | <b>Useful language</b> Being tactful in formal discussions   | 24   |
| 4D                                     | Where does her talent come from?                            | <b>Reading</b> A newspaper article<br><b>Writing skills</b> Organising information; Showing time relationships<br><b>Writing</b> An article about someone famous | 25   |
| <b>Reading and listening extension</b> |   | <b>Reading</b> How to make good decisions<br><b>Listening</b> Explicit and implicit memory   | 26   |
| <b>Review and extension</b>            |   | <b>WORDPOWER</b> <i>mind</i>   | 27   |
| Unit 5 Fairness                        |   |  |      |
| 5A                                     | A place where you have to look over your shoulder           | <b>Grammar</b> Relative clauses<br><b>Vocabulary</b> Crime and justice   | 28   |
| 5B                                     | It's essential to have the right qualifications             | <b>Grammar</b> Willingness, obligation and necessity<br><b>Vocabulary</b> Employment   | 29   |
| 5C                                     | If I remember rightly                                       | <b>Useful language</b> Recalling and speculating   | 30   |
| 5D                                     | It's a way of making the application process more efficient | <b>Reading</b> An article on job applications<br><b>Writing skills</b> Essays; Linking: addition and reinforcement<br><b>Writing</b> An opinion essay            | 31   |
| <b>Reading and listening extension</b> |   | <b>Reading</b> Restorative justice<br><b>Listening</b> Talking about working conditions  | 32   |
| <b>Review and extension</b>            |   | <b>WORDPOWER</b> Idioms: Crime   | 33   |



| Unit 6 Perspectives  |   |  | Page  |
|--|---|--|---|
| 6A   | We all seem to be using digital cameras         | <b>Grammar</b> Simple and continuous verbs<br><b>Vocabulary</b> Adjectives: Describing images      | <b>Pronunciation</b> Sentence stress<br>34  |
| 6B   | Waiting for the drama to begin                  | <b>Grammar</b> Participle clauses<br><b>Vocabulary</b> Emotions                                    | <b>Pronunciation</b> Emphatic stress<br>35  |
| 6C   | First and foremost                              | <b>Useful language</b> Organising a presentation   | <b>Pronunciation</b> Tone in comment phrases<br>36  |
| 6D   | I played an active role                         | <b>Reading</b> A letter of application   | <b>Writing skills</b> Formal letters; Giving a positive impression<br><b>Writing</b> A formal letter of application<br>37             |
| <b>Reading and listening extension</b>   |   | <b>Reading</b> The woman of many faces   | <b>Listening</b> Two professional photographers<br>38   |
| <b>Review and extension</b>  |   | <b>WORDPOWER</b> Idioms: Feelings  | 39  |
| Unit 7 Connections   |   |  |   |
| 7A   | There's no way robots will ever replace humans  | <b>Grammar</b> Speculation and deduction<br><b>Vocabulary</b> Compound adjectives                  | 40  |
| 7B   | What I enjoy is a heart-to-heart chat           | <b>Grammar</b> Cleft sentences<br><b>Vocabulary</b> Nouns with suffixes: Society and relationships | <b>Pronunciation</b> Stress in cleft structures<br>41   |
| 7C   | I was out of line                               | <b>Useful language</b> Apologising and admitting fault   | <b>Pronunciation</b> Sound and spelling: <i>ou</i> and <i>ough</i><br>42  |
| 7D   | It may result in improved cooperation           | <b>Reading</b> A report  | <b>Writing skills</b> Proposals; Linking: highlighting and giving examples<br><b>Writing</b> A short proposal<br>43                   |
| <b>Reading and listening extension</b>   |   | <b>Reading</b> Friendship and happiness  | <b>Listening</b> Robots and the elderly<br>44   |
| <b>Review and extension</b>  |   | <b>WORDPOWER</b> <i>self-</i>  | 45  |
| Unit 8 Body and health   |   |  |   |
| 8A   | It's no use trying to go to sleep               | <b>Grammar</b> Gerunds and infinitives<br><b>Vocabulary</b> Sleep                                  | <b>Pronunciation</b> Sentence stress<br>46  |
| 8B   | Suppose you could live forever                  | <b>Grammar</b> Conditionals<br><b>Vocabulary</b> Ageing and health                                 | <b>Pronunciation</b> Pitch: extra information<br>47   |
| 8C   | Is that your best offer?                        | <b>Useful language</b> Negotiating   | <b>Pronunciation</b> Intonation in implied questions<br>48  |
| 8D   | It's a unique dining experience                 | <b>Reading</b> A hotel home page   | <b>Writing skills</b> Promotional material; Using persuasive language<br><b>Writing</b> A description of a hotel for a website<br>49  |
| <b>Reading and listening extension</b>   |   | <b>Reading</b> Hanging on in for a good night's sleep  | <b>Listening</b> Turning 70<br>50   |
| <b>Review and extension</b>  |   | <b>WORDPOWER</b> <i>and</i>  | 51  |
| Unit 9 Cities  |   |  |   |
| 9A   | They did it all themselves                      | <b>Grammar</b> Reflexive and reciprocal pronouns<br><b>Vocabulary</b> Verbs with <i>re-</i>        | 52  |
| 9B   | They wanted a dramatic skyline and they got one | <b>Grammar</b> Ellipsis and substitution<br><b>Vocabulary</b> Describing buildings                 | <b>Pronunciation</b> Word stress<br>53  |
| 9C   | Let's not jump to conclusions                   | <b>Useful language</b> Dealing with conflict   | <b>Pronunciation</b> Sound and spelling: foreign words in English<br>54   |
| 9D   | The impact on cities is plain to see            | <b>Reading</b> The transformation of Baltimore   | <b>Writing skills</b> Discussion essays; Linking: reason and result<br><b>Writing</b> Describing a redevelopment plan in a city<br>55 |
| <b>Reading and listening extension</b>   |   | <b>Reading</b> Urban planning and the 'weird' city   | <b>Listening</b> Urban planning<br>56   |
| <b>Review and extension</b>  |   | <b>WORDPOWER</b> <i>build</i>  | 57  |
| Unit 10 Occasions  |   |  |   |
| 10A  | I really wish I'd been on time                  | <b>Grammar</b> Regret and criticism structures<br><b>Vocabulary</b> Communication verbs            | <b>Pronunciation</b> Word groups and main stress<br>58  |
| 10B  | It's said that peacock feathers are bad luck    | <b>Grammar</b> Passive reporting verbs<br><b>Vocabulary</b> Superstitions, customs and beliefs     | <b>Pronunciation</b> Consonant groups<br>59   |
| 10C  | Before we move on                               | <b>Useful language</b> Turn-taking   | <b>Pronunciation</b> Tone in question tags<br>60  |
| 10D  | It's an intense and inspiring story             | <b>Reading</b> A film review   | <b>Writing skills</b> Film reviews; Concise description<br><b>Writing</b> A film review<br>61   |
| <b>Reading and listening extension</b>   |   | <b>Reading</b> Notes from a rationalist  | <b>Listening</b> A teachers' conference<br>62   |
| <b>Review and extension</b>  |   | <b>WORDPOWER</b> <i>luck and chance</i>  | 63  |
| <b>Vox pop video</b>   |   |  | 64  |
|  |   |  |   |
| <b>Audioscripts</b>  |   |  | 71  |
| <b>Answer key</b>  |   |  | 78  |

# 1A I learned French entirely by ear

## 1 GRAMMAR

### Adverbs and adverbial phrases

a Complete the text with the words in the box.

clearly apparently effectively widely  
quite unfortunately simply extremely



Whether you are a student, a professional athlete, an engineer or <sup>1</sup> simply a tourist, English has become an <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ important skill to acquire. English will <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ soon be the language of choice in all fields of study, if it isn't already. For students embarking on their studies, therefore, an early decision <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ has to be made. What language do I wish to study my degree in? Degrees in medicine delivered in English at a university in Poland are <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ very popular but you will need a reasonable level of English to start. If you need to study English before university, it's <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ agreed that you learn the most <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ in an English-speaking environment but, <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, not all students can afford the time and cost of a course abroad.

b Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- that hard / people think / actually not / Russian is / to learn / difficult but it's .  
People think Russian is difficult but it's actually not that hard to learn.
- you listen / rapidly if / will improve / and watch films / to music / your English .  
\_\_\_\_\_
- England / language schools / opened / in the seventies in / lots of .  
\_\_\_\_\_
- presumably / you lived / so / speak / you / fluently / French / in Paris .  
\_\_\_\_\_
- hardest / for / adult learners, / listening is / the / usually / skill .  
\_\_\_\_\_
- never / vocabulary / new / I / down / write / almost .  
\_\_\_\_\_

## 2 VOCABULARY Language learning

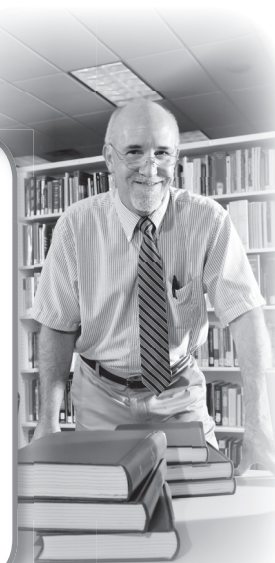
a Underline the correct words to complete the sentences.

- I studied German at university but I'm going to Berlin next year to pick / brush / take it up.
- My brother speaks four languages – he really has an ear / eye / mouth for them.
- I know Japanese is hard, but you must keep on / to / at it if you want the job.
- I'm French, but my son was born in Italy. From an early age he pulled / picked / took up lots of Italian expressions.
- I studied in China and I fought / raced / struggled with writing the characters for a long time.
- It takes time to get accustomed / ready / along to a new teaching style.
- My Spanish is a little cracked / broken / rusty. I haven't spoken it for a while.
- My sister can hold a chat / speech / conversation in several European languages.

## 3 VOCABULARY Noun forms

a Read the text and complete the words in the sentences below.

We run a complete five-year degree course in medicine, with all lectures and seminars delivered in English by my very competent and dedicated staff. The participants have to have an excellent level of English, and above all are very capable future doctors who are highly motivated. Our programme is very interactive and nearly all our candidates pass with good grades, despite living in Warsaw where there are so many things to take your mind off studying. We have occasional misunderstandings when one language interferes with another, but generally the course runs well.



- An advanced level of English is an absolute necessity on this course.
- I have a team of teachers who show great d\_\_\_\_\_ to the course and the students.
- M\_\_\_\_\_ is never a problem for our students, who all want to become doctors.
- All our lectures have elements of i\_\_\_\_\_ to involve the students.
- There are many d\_\_\_\_\_ in a city like Warsaw so they have to stay focused.
- Our students need both medical and linguistic c\_\_\_\_\_, which can be challenging.
- Sometimes there is a r\_\_\_\_\_ to speak English because they can all speak Polish.
- It is hard to avoid i\_\_\_\_\_ from the mother tongue, even if your English is brilliant.

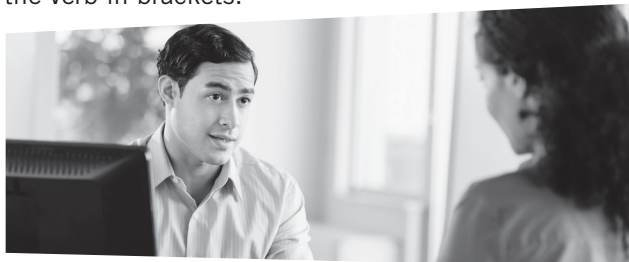
# 1B Language has been constantly evolving

## 1 GRAMMAR The perfect aspect

a Underline the correct words to complete the sentences.

- The team had been training / has been training for three months already when the season started.
- By September, I will have been studying / will study Arabic for three years.
- I only joined the choir at university because I haven't found / hadn't found anything else to do.
- This is the fourth time I try / have tried to learn to dance.
- I never have written / have never written such a difficult essay as this one.
- She has been revising / had been revising for this exam since early this morning.

b Complete the conversation using the correct form of the verb in brackets.



- ROBERT Thank you for coming, Emilie.  
 EMILIE My pleasure.  
 ROBERT So how long <sup>1</sup> have you been living (live) in New Zealand?  
 EMILIE By December, I <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (be) here for a year.  
 ROBERT <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ever/have) a job in the hotel industry before?  
 EMILIE Yes, I have. I worked in a hotel in Geneva for two years before I <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (move) here.  
 ROBERT So why did you apply for this particular post?  
 EMILIE As soon as I <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (see) it, I thought it was the right job for me.  
 ROBERT What do you like about it?  
 EMILIE I <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (always/enjoy) working with people and being customer-facing so this position seems ideal.  
 ROBERT This isn't your first application, is it?  
 EMILIE No, this is the second time I <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (apply). The first time my English wasn't good enough.  
 ROBERT It sounds good now.  
 EMILIE It <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (get) a lot better. I <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (only just/arrive) the last time I applied.  
 ROBERT Do you have any questions?  
 EMILIE When will I know if I <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (be) successful?  
 ROBERT We <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (make) our decision by the end of next week. Ten days at the most.  
 EMILIE That's fine. I'll wait to hear from you.

c 1.1 Listen and check.

## 2 VOCABULARY Describing changes

a Complete the text with the words in the box.

rapid changes substantially noticeable way  
barely shift increase subtle ongoing

Changes to the English language may not always be immediately <sup>1</sup> noticeable, but because over 500 million people now use it as their first language, it is constantly evolving.

Some <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ changes, often made in an attempt to simplify the language, are <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ perceptible. However, over time we notice that people are not using 'shall' as much in the first person, or 'no?' is being used instead of question tags, which seem to be on the <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ out.

The use of Americanisms by British youth is clearly on the <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, with expressions such as 'Can I get a coffee?' becoming very common. Interest in American TV shows and music has grown <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ over the last 20 years, leading to this <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ rise in American usage.

Linguists and lexicographers spot the most <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ changes in the language and make decisions as to whether a steady <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ over time is enough to justify a new dictionary entry or even a change to a grammar rule.

The most lasting <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to the language come as the result of major innovations in lifestyle. The digital revolution, just like the automobile revolution a hundred years before, has introduced a large number of new expressions and usages, from 'trash' to 'paste' to 'tablet'.

## 3 PRONUNCIATION Sentence stress

a 1.2 Listen and underline the stressed words in bold.

- The team **had been training** for three months already when the season started.
- By September, I **will have been studying** Arabic for three years.
- This is the fourth time I **have tried** to learn ballroom dancing.
- They **have been practising** this piece on the piano for about three months now.
- By the time I got to rehearsal, the actors **had been working** for about an hour.
- She **has been revising** for this exam since early this morning.

# 10 Everyday English

Something along those lines



## 1 USEFUL LANGUAGE

### Expressing yourself in an inexact way

- a** **1.3** Complete the conversation with the expressions in the box.

loads of   give or take   something to do with  
words to that effect   ~~sort of~~   whatsisname  
somewhere in the region of

- TIM** Thanks for helping me with this, Harry. I really appreciate it.  
**HARRY** No problem, Tim.  
**TIM** This is <sup>1</sup> sort of my first report and I want to get it right.  
**HARRY** Sure. I still remember my first one.  
**TIM** You've done <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ them since then, I suppose. How long have you been here?  
**HARRY** Twenty years. <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a couple.  
**TIM** So you've done a lot of reports?  
**HARRY** Quite a few.  
**TIM** Hundreds, I expect. So who should I copy my report to?  
**HARRY** <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ in Finance and probably that other guy.  
**TIM** Who?  
**HARRY** Thingy. The tall guy. He's <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ sales. It'll come back to me. Next question?  
**TIM** How long should the report be?  
**HARRY** Not too long.  
**TIM** Quite short then? Good.  
**HARRY** But not too short. <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ three or four pages.  
**TIM** That's not too hard then. Three to four pages. Plus a cover page. What should I call it?  
**HARRY** *The future of the company.* Or <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.  
**TIM** Brilliant idea. Final question. Can I buy you lunch?  
**HARRY** Of course you can. What's the budget?  
**TIM** About a tenner? Will that be enough?  
**HARRY** I suppose it will have to be. Let's go.

- b** Match questions 1–6 with responses a–f.

- 1 ☒ **e** Who gave you this book?  
 2 ☐ Can I borrow one of these pencils?  
 3 ☐ Did he say I wasn't invited to the wedding?  
 4 ☐ What was that phone call about?  
 5 ☐ What's quinoa?  
 6 ☐ How much are the flights?  
 a Something to do with our internet connection.  
 b Well, words to that effect.  
 c They're somewhere in the region of \$500 per person.  
 d Sure! I've got loads of them!  
 e Oh, whatshername, the girl with the red hair?  
 f It's a sort of cereal. A bit like rice.

## 2 PRONUNCIATION

### Sound and spelling: ea, ee and ie

- a** **1.4** Listen. How are the letters in **bold** pronounced in each word? Complete the table.

- 1 It's a good care**er**.  
 2 I prefer the gre**en** one.  
 3 Let's have fruit instea**d**.  
 4 I never wea**r** a tie.  
 5 People don't ea**rn** much here.  
 6 Shall we have a br**ea**k?  
 7 I don't belie**v**e it.  
 8 I can't bea**r** it.  
 9 I'm going to the pie**r**.  
 10 What did you lea**r**n?  
 11 He's a grea**t** player.  
 12 Br**ea**d, anyone?

| Sound 1 /i:/<br>(e.g. <b>be</b> )   | Sound 2 /e/<br>(e.g. <b>ten</b> )   | Sound 3 /ɛ:/<br>(e.g. <b>take</b> )  |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
|                                     |                                     |                                      |
| Sound 4 /eə/<br>(e.g. <b>hair</b> ) | Sound 5 /ɪə/<br>(e.g. <b>hear</b> ) | Sound 6 /ɜ:/<br>(e.g. <b>serve</b> ) |
|                                     | career                              |                                      |



# 1D Skills for Writing

You're spot on there!



## 1 READING

a Read the blog. Are the sentences true or false?

- 1 Takahiro likes Edinburgh.
- 2 Takahiro thinks the food is a bit hot.
- 3 Takahiro is the last person to come home every day.
- 4 Takahiro has the same classes five days a week.
- 5 Takahiro has an active social life.
- 6 Takahiro is thinking a lot about the weather in Japan.

b Takahiro's blog started a heated discussion on the value of studying English abroad. Read some opinions (1–8) which were expressed in the comments. Are the opinions direct or softened? Tick (✓) the correct box.

|  | Direct                              | Softened                 |
|--|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 How can you possibly think that?           | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 That doesn't make sense, if you ask me.    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 I don't get what the fuss is all about.    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 I have to say I'm in two minds about this. | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 It seems to me you are missing the point.  | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6 No way!                                    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7 That's rubbish.                            | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 8 I'm sorry, but that simply isn't true.     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/> |

## 2 WRITING SKILLS Expressing opinions

a Correct the words that are wrong.

- 1 Sorry, but that's the load of rubbish.  
Sorry, but that's a load of rubbish.
- 2 I disagree. You've got the point about the price of transport, by the way.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I'm in two heads about this. I'm not sure if you are right or not.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 I don't quite guess what the fuss is about. In my opinion, Edinburgh is cheap.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 You've spot on there. Listening is really tricky. Keep practising.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I agree with the others to a point but I think speaking is harder. Good luck!  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 7 You are all missing the points. Learning English just takes time.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 8 I had go along with that. Good discussion, by the way.  
\_\_\_\_\_

### First impressions – Takahiro Yoshida

I have been here for one week already and I must say my first impressions of Edinburgh are very positive. All the international students are staying with families for the first two weeks and then we move into self-catering accommodation for two more months.

I think I have been very lucky – my room is nice and large, just a little dark, and the food is excellent, although sometimes it is a little spicy. The family, particularly the children, are very friendly and they are patient with my English. The father works until quite late but the mother and children always have dinner with me.

The city seems less busy than Kyoto and the bus system seems to be very efficient, if a little expensive. We have English classes every morning and we have afternoon lectures three times a week. The lecturers speak quite quickly – I hope my listening improves soon. We have quite a lot of homework each evening and there is always one exercise I have to discuss with my family, which gives us an opportunity to talk together.

I have visited the castle and one of the museums this week and I went with my friends to a concert. It was very busy and so noisy. Overall, I am very happy here and am looking forward to the next two months. The only thing I miss is the rice and miso soup!

## 3 WRITING

a Read the comment on a discussion board. Write a comment of five or six sentences giving your point of view. Remember to express your opinions clearly and support your ideas.

### COMMENTS

#### IN THE FUTURE WE WON'T NEED TEACHERS

Over the last 20 years, the Internet has developed to such a degree that soon most subjects we want to study will be available to us online. Already we can attend MOOCs and watch videos of lectures taking place at some of the most prestigious universities in the world. We can do the follow-up reading and listen to the lecture as many times as we want. All of this is available twenty-four hours a day and it's free of charge.

We can also access micro-teaching, where short clips and texts are posted online. These small chunks of information allow us to learn at our own pace, in a size we can cope with. Most internet pages are also translated these days, so if we want to compare a text in two languages we can and if we want a video to be subtitled that is often possible too.

With all this information continuously available free of charge, it will make it easier for all of us to learn online. This is particularly useful for people in remote regions who cannot attend schools or colleges or for people who for other reasons cannot travel for their education.

The idea of lifelong learning is that we never stop developing and learning new content and skills. Without teachers we can still develop a lot, thanks to the Internet.

# UNIT 1

## Reading and listening extension

### 1 READING

**a** Read the article. Match paragraph numbers 1–6 with summaries a–f.

- a ☐ Challenges for language teachers
- b ☐ Ways of making CLIL successful
- c ☒ Introducing the subject
- d ☐ Challenges for subject teachers
- e ☐ Whether or not CLIL works
- f ☐ A reason for CLIL

**b** Underline the best words to complete the sentences.

- 1 The idea of studying subjects and languages together can make both students and teachers *enthusiastic* / *anxious* / *excited*.
- 2 The European Union wants its citizens to *speak several languages* / *improve their English* / *become more efficient*.
- 3 CLIL courses *are based on* / *try to follow* / *do not follow* the traditional structure of language courses.
- 4 In CLIL, grammatical structures *are more important than* / *come out of* / *are learned separately from* the subject information being taught.
- 5 The idea behind CLIL has existed for *a short time* / *over 100 years* / *a number of years*.

**c** According to the article, are the sentences true or false, or is there not enough information to be sure?

- 1 The CLIL method is used in many places.
- 2 Using CLIL means that schools save lesson time.
- 3 CLIL materials are designed to present language structures in a logical order.
- 4 Students learn grammar better in CLIL classes.
- 5 Subject teachers usually have language courses before teaching CLIL.
- 6 When content and language teachers teach CLIL, they both have to change their style.
- 7 CLIL only works with highly able students.
- 8 CLIL students end up with better language skills than students taught traditionally.

**d** Write a short essay giving your reactions to the idea of CLIL. Include answers to these questions:

- Do you have CLIL lessons or do you think you would enjoy them?
- What are the advantages?
- What are the disadvantages?
- What are the practical implications for teachers and students?
- Do you think CLIL should be introduced in primary schools? Secondary schools? Give your reasons.

## COULD YOU LEARN PHYSICS *IN JAPANESE?*

- 1 Learning a language is hard enough, as is learning a subject like maths or physics. But doing both things simultaneously in the same class? It may sound daunting, but that's precisely the approach taken in the now-widespread methodology known as CLIL (Content and Language Integrated Learning).
- 2 CLIL was introduced in Europe in the 1990s, primarily to meet the European Union aims of producing multilingual populations. One of its main justifications was efficiency; if languages could be picked up through exposure in other subject lessons, pressure on packed timetables would be reduced.
- 3 Of course, CLIL brings many challenges, not least for teachers who are required to make radical adjustments to the way they teach. For language teachers, there is a near-complete reversal of what they are accustomed to: whereas in a traditional language course, texts are constructed primarily as a vehicle for the language points they want to teach, in CLIL the language emerges somewhat randomly from the subject content. With grammar, for example, there is much less opportunity to focus on specific points, but the theory is that students learn appropriate use through the context in which they come across the language.
- 4 Conversely, subject teachers can no longer talk about their subjects to their students and assume they will understand everything. They will almost certainly need to

adopt some different approaches, such as greater levels of practical demonstration or experimentation, rather than relying so heavily on language to convey information. There is also a good deal of fear to overcome. Subject teachers may have attained only low levels of language skills and therefore lack confidence in teaching in a foreign language, while a language teacher's initial reaction to the idea of teaching maths will often be one of horror!

- 5 Solutions to these problems will vary according to the setting in which teachers work. Good CLIL teaching materials are increasingly available, while many schools practise a collaborative approach, with language and subject teachers negotiating both the balance between language and content, and the ways in which their different teaching styles can be brought together in a successful lesson.
- 6 So does CLIL work? Well, as with many so-called innovations, the basic theory of CLIL has been around for centuries, with even upper-middle class Ancient Romans preferring their offspring to be educated in Greek. Ideas don't tend to persist if they have no value, and now that many schools have been implementing CLIL for a number of years, research seems to indicate that it has been producing good results, with mixed-ability classes as well as elite students. It could be that the concentration required to understand the language means that the subject information is correspondingly well absorbed.

# Review and extension



## 2 LISTENING

**a** **1.5** Listen to the conversation between David and Julia. Tick (✓) the best summary 1–3.

- 1 ☐ David and Julia talk about changes to the grammar and vocabulary of the English language. Julia gives David some examples of new words and David is very surprised.
- 2 ☐ David and Julia discuss words that have recently come into English. David doesn't think that any new words should be put into the dictionary.
- 3 ☐ David and Julia talk about new words. Julia explains where some new words come from. David has strong opinions about some of them.

**b** **1.5** Listen again. Who expresses opinions 1–10: David, Julia or neither of them?

- 1 It is surprising to hear that we need new dictionaries.
- 2 New dictionaries are needed to record language change.
- 3 Every dictionary should have at least 200 words added every year.
- 4 Words like 'selfie' shouldn't be in dictionaries.
- 5 Lexicographers leave out words they consider too informal.
- 6 Some words are popular for a short time and then die out.
- 7 Technology words come and go because technology itself changes quickly.
- 8 Many new words come from other languages.
- 9 Portmanteau words are common in fashion.
- 10 The subject of food produces more words than any other.

**c** Write a conversation between two friends about changes to your first language. Think about these questions or use ideas of your own:

- Has your language changed much recently?
- Can you think of any new words in your language, and if so, what subject areas do they come from?
- Is there a national organisation in your country that 'protects' your language?
- Have words from other languages come into your language?
- Do you approve or disapprove of changes to your language?

## 1 GRAMMAR and VOCABULARY

Correct the errors in the underlined words.

- 1 I watch the news and I like especially movies.  
I watch the news and I especially like movies.
- 2 They were hoping really to stay with us but nobody told us.
- 3 She speaks fluent French and she knows also Italian.
- 4 You can find easily a shop that sells fruit and vegetables.
- 5 I met the teacher recently who taught me history at school.
- 6 As the restaurant grew in popularity, we felt the necessity to take on more and more staff.
- 7 We concluded that the programme had some serious limitation.
- 8 The improvement in performance was most noticable in the second half of the year.
- 9 The number of days off taken by employees increased steady through November and December.
- 10 We received a substancial increase in funding from one of our benefactors.

## 2 WORDPOWER Idioms: Body parts

Rewrite the sentences. Replace the underlined words with the words in the box. Make any changes needed.

fight tooth and nail    ~~head-and-shoulders above~~  
a safe pair of hands    bite one's tongue  
have a nose for

- 1 Our local beach volleyball team is brilliant – so much better than the other teams in the area.  
Our local beach volleyball team is brilliant – head and shoulders above the other teams in the area.
- 2 She can be very rude – I have to stop myself from saying something to her, to avoid an argument.
- 3 When I was a child, my mother tried very hard to get me the best education possible, and she succeeded!
- 4 I love going shopping with my friend Sandra – she's really good at finding bargains!
- 5 I recently employed an accountant to manage my money. I'm so glad I did – he's doing a great job.

## REVIEW YOUR PROGRESS

Look again at Review your progress on p.18 of the Student's Book. How well can you do these things now?

3 = very well    2 = well    1 = not so well

### I CAN ...

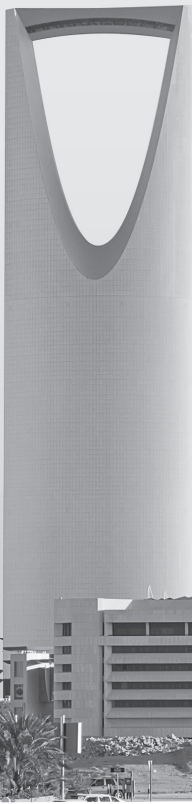
|  |                          |
|--|--------------------------|
| talk about second language learning    | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| describe languages and how they change | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| express myself in an inexact way       | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| write a web forum post.                | <input type="checkbox"/> |



# 2A I would happily have stayed longer

## 1 GRAMMAR Comparison

a Underline the correct words to complete the text.



I recently experienced <sup>1</sup>*one of the most silent / the most silent / some very silent* nights of my life. I was visiting friends in Riyadh and they suggested going out to the desert. We left the city at dusk and the <sup>2</sup>*furthest / further / far* we went, the <sup>3</sup>*darker / darkest / more dark* it got. After about two hours, we arrived at the camp and pitched our tent. It was <sup>4</sup>*considerably / not nearly as / nowhere near* colder than I had expected but the view was stunning. All I could hear was my own breathing as I looked at <sup>5</sup>*the more / the really / the most* amazing sky. The stars were <sup>6</sup>*much / more / almost* as clearer and <sup>7</sup>*much / more / too* numerous than I had ever experienced. That night, I definitely felt <sup>8</sup>*not any / significantly / almost* more aware of the size of the universe.

b  2.1 Listen and check.

## 2 VOCABULARY

### Multi-word verbs: Social interaction

a Match the expressions in **bold** in 1–8 with the definitions a–h.

- 1 ☒ c She doesn't **come across** very well.
- 2 ☐ She **goes on and on** about her ex-boss.
- 3 ☐ She **cuts herself off** from some of us.
- 4 ☐ She's always **running down** her manager.
- 5 ☐ She **bombards** her team **with questions**.
- 6 ☐ She **doesn't really fit in** here.
- 7 ☐ She never **holds back** in meetings.
- 8 ☐ She **brings out the worst** in me.

- a stop oneself from saying something
- b ask too many questions
- c make a good impression
- d ignore completely
- e be different from everyone else
- f be very critical
- g make other people act badly
- h not stop talking




b Underline the correct words to complete the conversation.

- A So, tell me all. How was the big meeting?  
 B It was a bit more relaxed than I'd expected.  
 A So did you manage to <sup>1</sup>*bring / fit / get* in with all those important people?  
 B I guess so. I hope I <sup>2</sup>*went / brought / came* across well – there were a number of people I could <sup>3</sup>*like / relate / take* to.  
 A How was the 'Big Boss'?  
 B He was OK. When I first got there, he <sup>4</sup>*asked / discussed / bombarded* me with questions about our current project. Overall, I think I did quite well, actually. Mind you, my thoughts on the manager nearly <sup>5</sup>*left / brought / slipped* out.  
 A I hope you <sup>6</sup>*held / got / saw* yourself back.  
 B Of course I did. Some of the discussions <sup>7</sup>*took / showed / brought* out the worst in some of the participants. One man <sup>8</sup>*said / went / told* on and on about the budget. It was as if he was the only one affected. Anyway, the whole thing was fine. It was a great day and I learned lots.  
 A Well done. You obviously handled the whole thing very professionally.

c  2.2 Listen and check.

## 3 PRONUNCIATION

### Consonant–vowel linking

a  2.3 Listen to the sentences and mark the consonant–vowel linking with the symbol ∪.

- 1 It was a bit more relaxed than I'd expected.
- 2 So did you manage to fit in with all those important people?
- 3 Overall, I think I did quite well, actually.
- 4 One man went on and on about the budget.
- 5 It was a great day and I learned lots.



# 2B I'll be jumping from 900 metres

## 1 GRAMMAR

### Intentions and arrangements

a Complete the email using the phrases in the box.

is due to ~~are leaving~~ hoping to arrive on  
about to won't see plan to take her will be  
will be going might be

Dear Mario

Just a quick email to tell you about our trip to the US. We <sup>1</sup> are leaving this Friday, initially for Dallas, because Sarah is graduating. We <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Saturday at eleven and the ceremony is that afternoon at three!

She's <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ stay on for her Master's so it <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ good to see her for a few days. She <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ get a reply from her university next week so she will know soon enough. If she gets an offer, we <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ away for a short break because we <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ her again for at least six months.

After that, we fly to California, so it would be great to meet up. I'm not sure if you <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to the NCON conference in San Diego. We'll be there on the 22nd and 23rd. I'm doing a presentation on the 23rd. There's a possibility we <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ seeing Antonia on the evening of the 22nd. Anyway, if you are going to be there, let's meet up. We're not going to visit Texas this time.

That's all for now, I've got a Skype call which is <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ start.

Regards

Tom

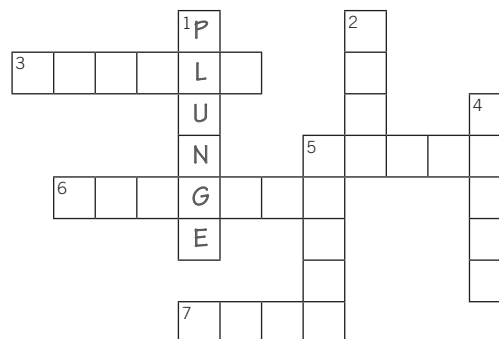
b Read the email again. Complete the table with the events in the box.

Tom's trip to USA Tom's presentation  
meeting with Mario trip to Texas break with Sarah  
Mario attending conference Sarah's graduation  
dinner with Antonia Tom's Skype call

| Definite          | Definitely not | Possible |
|-------------------|----------------|----------|
| Tom's trip to USA |                |          |

## 2 VOCABULARY Verbs of movement

a Complete the crossword puzzle.



→ Across

- move very quickly, especially in a way that seems dangerous
- move slowly often on hands and knees
- walk unsteadily as if about to fall
- walk slowly and with difficulty because of having an injured or painful leg or foot

↓ Down

- move suddenly forwards or downwards
- rise into the air very quickly
- move easily over a wet or slippery surface
- walk very quietly to avoid being seen or heard

b Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

drifting strolling marched  
rushed hurtling zoomed

- I love the feeling of hurtling downhill on my skis.
- The protestors \_\_\_\_\_ towards the headquarters, gathering support as they went.
- I was driving home today when suddenly a motorbike \_\_\_\_\_ past me at about 150 kph.
- With the anchor raised, the boat started \_\_\_\_\_ slowly downstream.
- Having overslept, he \_\_\_\_\_ out of the house so as not to miss the train.
- You can't beat the feeling of \_\_\_\_\_ in the sunshine without a care in the world.



## 3 PRONUNCIATION

### Word groups and main stress

a 2.4 Listen and underline the two words that have the main stress in each sentence.

- As part of the training, the civilians learned to march.
- After the injury, he limped off the pitch.
- He didn't just walk, he strolled.
- Suddenly the boat started drifting.
- I was in a hurry so I rushed.
- The car zoomed past at great speed.

# 20 Everyday English

## Don't get so wound up about it

### 1 USEFUL LANGUAGE Giving advice

a Complete the conversation with appropriate words.

- MARCO** What's the problem, Luisa?  
**LUISA** Nothing major. Well, actually ... Don't you dare tell anyone, but I'm thinking of leaving.  
**MARCO** You? Quitting? Why?  
**LUISA** My job is quite dull and the manager doesn't seem to realise I'm bored.  
**MARCO** Have you told him?  
**LUISA** Indirectly. I've dropped lots of hints.  
**MARCO** Yes, but there's a lot to be <sup>1</sup> said for being upfront. You need to tell him directly.  
**LUISA** He won't listen.  
**MARCO** It might even be in your <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to go above him and talk to his manager? It's <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ time you sorted this problem out.  
**LUISA** I don't think I could do that, Marco. That's not really my style. I just need a new challenge and I don't think I'm going to get it here and that's that.  
**MARCO** Don't <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ so defensive about it. Why don't you speak to HR?  
**LUISA** There's no point.  
**MARCO** I disagree. You might <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to try this. Have you thought about the <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of asking for a secondment or even a sabbatical?  
**LUISA** A sabbatical? That's not a bad idea. OK, I'll give it some thought.

b  **2.5** Listen and check.

c Match 1–5 with a–e.

- 1 ☒ **a** Why don't you come with me?
  - 2 ☐ **b** There's a lot to be said for cycling to work.
  - 3 ☐ **c** You might want to read this.
  - 4 ☐ **d** It's about time you went home.
  - 5 ☐ **e** You might as well cancel the meeting.
- a I am sure you'll be fine on your own.  
 b Why? How many can't come?  
 c I will as soon as I've finished this.  
 d Really? What's it about?  
 e I agree. Cheaper and healthier.

d  **2.6** Listen and check.



### 2 PRONUNCIATION Emphatic stress

a  **2.7** Listen and underline the stressed word in the responses.

- 1 **A** Did the manager email the supplier last week?  
**B** No, she telephoned them last week.
- 2 **A** Did the manager email the supplier last week?  
**B** No, she emailed them last month.
- 3 **A** Did all the participants speak English during the meeting?  
**B** No, everyone spoke German during the meeting.
- 4 **A** Did all the participants speak English during the meeting?  
**B** No, but the presenters spoke English.
- 5 **A** Will you be going to Italy on holiday again this year?  
**B** No, but I'll be going there for work.
- 6 **A** Will you be going to Italy on holiday again this year?  
**B** No, I think we'll be going to Greece.
- 7 **A** Are you flying to the meeting in Paris next week?  
**B** No, I think I'll be driving there.
- 8 **A** So you are doing a presentation in Berlin?  
**B** No, I'm doing a workshop in Berlin.

# 2D Skills for Writing

## Less adventurous students could try paintball

### 1 READING

a Read the report. Tick (✓) the questions which are answered in the text.

- 1 ☒ How long was the programme?
- 2 ☐ Where did the students study?
- 3 ☐ Did they take a direct flight?
- 4 ☐ What was the weather like in the first week?
- 5 ☐ Why did the students like the excursions?
- 6 ☐ How many teachers accompanied the group?

b Read the report again. Tick (✓) the correct words and phrases to complete the sentences.

- 1 The report is based on feedback from \_\_\_\_\_ sources.  
a ☐ one      b ☐ two      c ☒ four
- 2 It includes ideas to make the programme \_\_\_\_\_ next year.  
a ☐ longer      b ☐ better      c ☐ cheaper
- 3 The writer thinks it is worth paying for \_\_\_\_\_ next time.  
a ☐ direct flights  
b ☐ single rooms  
c ☐ better food
- 4 The classes had \_\_\_\_\_.  
a ☐ a mix of teachers  
b ☐ two teachers  
c ☐ one teacher
- 5 Of the activities mentioned, only the \_\_\_\_\_ did not take place.  
a ☐ excursions  
b ☐ Scottish dancing  
c ☐ punting
- 6 The writer is keen to make the trip again \_\_\_\_\_.  
a ☐ only if there are two teachers  
b ☐ even if there is only one teacher  
c ☐ provided all the changes are made

### 2 WRITING SKILLS Reports; Linking: contrast and concession

a Complete the comments with the words in the box.

on the other hand   even though   unlike  
alternatively   by comparison   despite

- 1 I thoroughly enjoyed the trip, despite the fact there were four in our room!
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ I felt very shy at first, I still managed to make friends.
- 3 I didn't really enjoy Jack's classes. \_\_\_\_\_, I did learn a lot.
- 4 Our room was very small, \_\_\_\_\_ some of the girls' bedrooms.
- 5 Winters at home are cold but, \_\_\_\_\_, winter in Edinburgh is freezing!
- 6 We should change teachers at the morning break or, \_\_\_\_\_, after lunch.

### Report by teacher following study abroad programme

The purpose of this report is to review the study abroad programme this year. It is based on feedback from the agency which arranged the travel, the teachers involved with the teaching, the students themselves and my personal observations throughout the two-week period. Overall, I feel the programme was a success, but I would like to make a number of suggestions so that future trips are even more beneficial to the students.

In terms of the travel, the students were happy and well-behaved, although I would recommend a direct flight next time, even if it proves more expensive. Five hours at Mumbai is a long time to wait, particularly on the return journey. As far as the accommodation is concerned, students were generally positive, despite the fact that some of them were sleeping four to a room. On the other hand, everyone was unanimous in their praise for the food.

Generally, the lessons were viewed as challenging and varied. However, a number of students in the advanced class thought the teacher was not very dynamic and I think this should be noted for next year. One suggestion was for all the groups to have a mix of teachers. Alternatively, teachers could be switched for the second week.

Despite the bad weather which we had in the second week, the leisure programme received great praise, in particular the two trips to London and the Scottish Dancing evening. The only negative point was the cancellation of the punting.

In conclusion, I would say that the trip was a great success and for next year we should make the changes suggested above to make it an even greater experience. I would also add that it would have been easier for me if the budget had allowed for a second teacher to accompany the group. Nevertheless, I would be delighted to be considered for next year's programme. I have attached some extracts from the survey I ran with the students to get their comments.

### 3 WRITING

a Write a short report (200 words) on the topic. 'Something in your area that you feel could be improved'. Remember to use linking words to connect your ideas. Use these notes to help you:

- Introduce the problem. Where? What? Why?
- Describe your possible improvements. What? Why? How?
- What are the advantages and disadvantages of your suggestions?



# UNIT 2

## Reading and listening extension

### 1 READING

**a** Read the article about sensory play. Tick (✓) the best definition of sensory play 1–3.

- 1 ☐ Play that involves making a lot of mess with substances such as sand and water
- 2 ☐ Play that involves experimenting and learning
- 3 ☐ Play that involves using sight, smell, taste, touch and hearing

**b** Read the text again. Tick (✓) the correct answer.

- 1 Why is it clear that children enjoy sensory play?
  - a ☐ Because psychologists have proved it.
  - b ☐ Because they have always done it.
  - c ☒ Because we can see them doing it.
- 2 Why is a new baby able to recognise its own mother's voice?
  - a ☐ Because it is the first voice it hears when it is born.
  - b ☐ Because it already understands that everyone's voice is different.
  - c ☐ Because it has heard her voice before it is born.
- 3 Why do some people teach their babies sign language?
  - a ☐ So that the babies can communicate their feelings without speech.
  - b ☐ Because babies can't speak if they are too upset.
  - c ☐ Because it is important to deal with a baby's problems quickly.
- 4 Why does sensory play help children understand the physical world?
  - a ☐ Because they get direct experience of the qualities of objects and substances.
  - b ☐ Because they are given more educational toys to play with.
  - c ☐ Because it will help them to learn science in preparation for the future.
- 5 How can a parent bring language development into sensory play?
  - a ☐ By listening to the child describe its experiences.
  - b ☐ By describing the sensory experiences that are occurring.
  - c ☐ By allowing children to make a mess.

**c** Read the article again. Tick (✓) the opinions the author expresses.

- 1 ☐ The author thinks that young children are often reluctant to engage in sensory play.
- 2 ☐ She is rather surprised that babies are born with several sensory skills.
- 3 ☐ She is not completely convinced by the claims made about baby sign language.
- 4 ☐ She thinks that adults accept new ideas more easily than young children.
- 5 ☐ She thinks it's wrong for parents to keep their children too clean and tidy.

**d** Imagine you are planning a lesson for a group of five-year-old children. You want to teach them about different substances, such as rubber, water, sand, wool and wood. Write two or three paragraphs. Remember to include:

- which senses will help the children learn about the substances
- what equipment you'll need
- what the children might learn during your lesson.

**Noisy,  
MESSY,  
slippery,  
sticky;**

**it's all good for your child!**

Nobody who has witnessed a young child splashing in the bath or reaching out to grab a bunch of shiny keys will be in any doubt that kids love to use their senses, and do so without any inhibitions! But it's not just about having fun. Sensory play is a vital part of a child's physical and psychological development, contributing to a range of skills such as hand-eye coordination, concentration and decision-making.

Even the sensory skills of newborn babies are nowhere near as undeveloped as we might imagine. Although their sight is not good, we know that they are comforted by the feeling of being cuddled and rocked, and they also exhibit marked reactions to music or strong smells. In addition, they will already have begun to hear sounds while still in the womb and – incredibly – are able to distinguish their mother's voice from other voices at birth.


Their sensory reactions also cause them to exhibit displeasure, for example, at the feel of a wet nappy against their skin, or the unfamiliar texture of a new kind of food. Failure to recognise the cause of the ensuing screaming can be extremely frustrating for the parent or carer as well as the child. That is why more and more parents are turning to a form of 'baby sign language', which can be taught from the age of six months. Not only, say its advocates, does it eliminate the need for guesswork when your baby is awake and crying at 3 am, but it also results in higher educational attainment in later life.

Whether or not that is true, psychologists agree that, in general, sensory play is of great educational value to children, who are usually considerably more open to new ideas than their parents. As they pour sand from one container to another, or plunge their hands into a bowl of dried beans, they are learning to relate to the world around them. Their play area becomes in effect a hands-on science lab where they can experiment, make predictions ('What will happen if I drop this egg on the floor?'), try out new concepts, and respond to their findings.


Sensory play can also help with language acquisition, particularly if the parent articulates what is going on: 'Can you feel the fur? Mmm, smell this soap.' And of course, from the moment children begin to speak, they bombard their parents with questions, all of which contributes to their speech and learning.

It's obvious that children enjoy using their senses, and all the evidence points to the fact that we should allow them the freedom to do so. Sand, mud, water; think of them as educational tools: the messier the better!

## 2 LISTENING

**a**  **2.3** Listen to the conversation between Carla and Rakesh. Complete the sentences.

- 1 Rakesh has lost his sense of \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 This also affects his sense of \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Carla's \_\_\_\_\_ had the same problem.
- 4 Rakesh's \_\_\_\_\_ isn't sure of the cause.

**b**  **2.3** Listen again. Underline the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 Food is / isn't important to Rakesh.
- 2 Rakesh's girlfriend is / isn't sympathetic about his problem.
- 3 Carla does / doesn't understand Rakesh's problem.
- 4 Carla's uncle did / didn't make a full recovery from his stroke.
- 5 Rakesh is / isn't aware of the safety measures he needs to take.
- 6 Rakesh has / hasn't seen a specialist.
- 7 Rakesh's own doctor knows / doesn't know the reason for his problem.
- 8 Rakesh thinks / doesn't think that stopping smoking will help him.

**c** Which of these things are mentioned in the conversation? Tick (✓) the correct boxes.

- 1 Causes of loss of smell
  - a ☐ stroke
  - b ☐ reaction to medicines
  - c ☐ head injury
  - d ☐ blockage in the nose
  - e ☐ infection from a virus
  - f ☐ problems with nerve signals
- 2 Safety measures
  - a ☐ smoke alarms
  - b ☐ gas detector
  - c ☐ checking chemicals such as household cleaners
  - d ☐ checking dates on food

**d** Write a conversation between two people discussing the loss of one of their senses: taste, smell, sight, touch or hearing. Think about these questions or use ideas of your own:

- What would be the hardest sense to lose?
- What would be the physical and psychological consequences of losing a sense?
- What measures would the person need to take if he or she lost a sense?

# Review and extension

## 1 GRAMMAR and VOCABULARY

Correct the errors in the underlined words.

- 1 More you work, you have more stress.  
The more you work, the more stress you have.
- 2 I really hope you enjoy your course so much as I did.
- 3 As I liked these friends, I was more and more hanging around with them.
- 4 Cars present a great danger for the environment, which is being polluted quicker and quicker.
- 5 I like the kitchen best, because it is the room with more light and it has a nice atmosphere.
- 6 I'm glad to hear from you. I'm trying to explain everything about this job.
- 7 I lept out of bed, put some clothes on and went down to the garage to my car.
- 8 One night we crept into the office, and borrowed the keys to the SUV!
- 9 I slided along the ice on my stomach to try to pull him out.
- 10 They were constantly bombing me with questions.

## 2 WORDPOWER Idioms: Movement

Rewrite the sentences. Replace the underlined words with the words in the box. Make any changes needed.

give it a whirl   feel a rush   ~~on a roll~~  
jump at the chance   take the plunge

- 1 My cousin's a singer and she's doing really well at the moment – she won two singing competitions last month!  
My cousin's a singer and she's on a roll at the moment – she won two singing competitions last month!
- 2 A friend of mine has just turned down the chance to go on a three-week safari! I would love to have a holiday like that!
- 3 When I saw my favourite band on stage for the first time, I got such a strong feeling of excitement!
- 4 I'm terrified of heights, but I'm going to face my fear and go on the biggest rollercoaster I can find.
- 5 There's a nice tapas restaurant nearby – I've never had tapas before but it looks good, so I don't mind trying it.

## REVIEW YOUR PROGRESS

Look again at Review your progress on p.30 of the Student's Book. How well can you do these things now?

3 = very well   2 = well   1 = not so well

### I CAN ...

- |  |                          |
|--|--------------------------|
| describe extreme sensory experiences                 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| talk about future plans, intentions and arrangements | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| give advice  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| write a report.                                      | <input type="checkbox"/> |

# 3A Never have I had such a rewarding experience

## 1 GRAMMAR Inversion

a Underline the correct words to complete the text.

Mary's Meals is a charity providing food to over one million schoolchildren in developing countries, but <sup>1</sup>not only / *no sooner* does the nutritious meal fill their bellies, it is also a motivation to attend school in the first place.

<sup>2</sup>*It is rare* / *Seldom* has a single charity done so much to help so many people. The teachers themselves are amazed at the difference in their pupils. <sup>3</sup>*Never* / *Often* have I felt and seen such a change in my pupils. They used to be so tired and hungry, they found it impossible to learn, yet not once <sup>4</sup>*I heard them* / *did I hear them* complain. Not until they started having a hot meal every lunchtime, <sup>5</sup>*did they start* / *they began* to be lively and keen to contribute and participate in class,' says one primary school teacher. The projects continue to grow. <sup>6</sup>*As soon as* / *No sooner* has one project been set up, than we are asked to do something in a neighbouring village or town,' comments one of the volunteers.

The food is sourced locally and cooked by volunteers, often relatives of the children. 'Not in a thousand years <sup>7</sup>*I would think* / *did I ever think* a meal a day could bring such a change to the lives of these kids, but not until every child has a meal every day <sup>8</sup>*can we really stop* / *we will never stop* our work,' another volunteer adds.



b Put the words in the correct order to make comments by volunteers.

- at no time / partying in Florida / did I miss .  
At no time did I miss partying in Florida.
- a difference / feel / making / did I / I was / not once .  
\_\_\_\_\_
- kids to read / arrived in New Orleans / had / were helping / we / no sooner / than we .  
\_\_\_\_\_
- also made / help lots of / people, / we / we / did / great friends / not only .  
\_\_\_\_\_
- will / ever forget / I / no way / things I saw there / the .  
\_\_\_\_\_
- really help / chance to / we / people / do / rarely / get a .  
\_\_\_\_\_

## 2 VOCABULARY Wealth and poverty

a Match the sentence halves.

- ☒ The charity helps people who are
- ☐ I've been lucky. I've never experienced any
- ☐ We had to sell our car to
- ☐ You'll get into debt if you don't learn to
- ☐ The boom was a time of economic
- ☐ They've got three cars, so they're obviously

- make ends meet.
- destitute.
- live within your means.
- well off.
- hardship.
- prosperity.

b Underline the correct words to complete the conversation.

- How would you describe your early life?
- Well, life was pretty tough. There was a lot of financial <sup>1</sup>hardship / *risk*.
- Where were you brought up?
- In a rather <sup>2</sup>*sparse* / *deprived* area with poor housing and not many amenities.
- Were you very poor?
- No, not really. We weren't exactly <sup>3</sup>*poverty* / *impoverished*. We were never rich but never <sup>4</sup>*destitute* / *well off* either. We had just enough money to live on and were careful to live <sup>5</sup>*on the breadline* / *within our means*.
- Now that you've become rich and have a large <sup>6</sup>*available* / *disposable* income, how has your life changed?
- Well, obviously I don't have to worry about <sup>7</sup>*wealth* / *making ends meet*. We live in a nice house in an affluent area.
- And are you happier?
- A good question. I would say my life is pretty comfortable now but <sup>8</sup>*prosperity* / *poverty* doesn't always necessarily bring you happiness.

c 3.1 Listen and check.

## 3 PRONUNCIATION Word stress

a 3.2 Listen to the words. What stress pattern do they have? Complete the table with the words.

neighbouring charity poverty destitute  
relatives enrolment everyone volunteer  
requirement improvement nutritious

| Ooo          | oOo | ooO |
|--------------|-----|-----|
| neighbouring |     |     |



# 3B I was expecting it to be tough

## 1 GRAMMAR Future in the past; Narrative tenses

a Match 1–8 with a–h to make sentences.

- 1 ☒ f She was leaving for the station
  - 2 ☐ Apparently she was going to tell me
  - 3 ☐ I thought I would be waiting a while
  - 4 ☐ We were set to head for the airport
  - 5 ☐ He was to take over as manager
  - 6 ☐ I was supposed to study Italian
  - 7 ☐ I planned to stay in Paris for a year
  - 8 ☐ I was about to accept a new job
- a but ended up with a degree in sociology.  
 b but never had the right opportunity.  
 c but actually stayed for three.  
 d when my manager asked me into his office.  
 e until we heard about the pilots' strike.  
 f when her mobile rang.  
 g but they suddenly changed their minds.  
 h so I bought myself a coffee.

b Read some sentences from a story about Oliver Broom, who travelled to Australia by bike to watch a cricket match. Underline the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 In late 2008, Oliver Broom was working / worked in London.
- 2 Having graduated six years before, he was to earn / earning a good salary.
- 3 It seemed he was having / had a bright future.
- 4 A good friend had been / was seriously injured on holiday some time before.
- 5 This had made him question what he has done / was doing with his life.
- 6 On top of that, he has / had just split up with his girlfriend.
- 7 He suddenly decided he would / might cycle to Australia.
- 8 He worked out a route which had to / would take him through over 20 countries.
- 9 The last leg was from Darwin to Brisbane, which was / is going to be another 5,000 kilometres.
- 10 He said he should / would spend the first few months in Europe.
- 11 No sooner had he arrived in Thailand than he was suddenly struck / striking down with Dengue fever and hospitalised.
- 12 Oli cycled into Brisbane the very day the cricket match was to start / has started.

c  3.3 Listen to the whole story and check your answers.

## 2 VOCABULARY Landscape features

a Match adjectives 1–8 with nouns a–h to make collocations.

- |  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> c arid | a coastline |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> empty             | b waters    |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> pristine          | c desert    |
| 4 <input type="checkbox"/> rocky             | d beaches   |
| 5 <input type="checkbox"/> rugged            | e moorland  |
| 6 <input type="checkbox"/> sheer             | f cliffs    |
| 7 <input type="checkbox"/> turquoise         | g slopes    |
| 8 <input type="checkbox"/> wooded            | h ground    |

b Underline the correct words to complete the email.

Dear all

This place is amazing. It literally is a tropical paradise with everything you could ask for. Pristine beaches, <sup>1</sup>dull / calm / cold turquoise waters to swim in and a forest canopy <sup>2</sup>full / rich / good with wildlife. Yesterday we took a boat trip and could see the rugged <sup>3</sup>beach / coastline / shore from the sea. It has dramatic, sheer cliffs and we got a chance to see birds nesting on the cliff <sup>4</sup>side / hanger / face.


Today we hiked inland through rich, green meadows and up the <sup>5</sup>angled / wooded / slanting slopes of the valleys. The view from the top was stunning! To one side, we could see <sup>6</sup>dense / heavy / high forest and to the other dry, rocky ground with hardly any vegetation. Tomorrow we are planning to go to the north where the terrain is completely different, with open, <sup>7</sup>empty / busy / wide moorland stretching for miles. As you approach the sea, there are massive <sup>8</sup>beach / sand / cove dunes, apparently. Sounds terrific.

Love to you all

Tina

## 3 PRONUNCIATION

Sound and spelling: the letter t

a  3.4 Listen to the sentences and notice how t is pronounced in the examples. Complete the table with the phrases in the box.

biggest egg can't find What a it's so got amazing  
 can't ask great in biggest fish great cook got four

| /t/ pronounced | /t/ not pronounced |
|----------------|--------------------|
| got amazing    | got four           |
|                |                    |

# 30 Everyday English

To cut a long story short



## 1 USEFUL LANGUAGE

### Paraphrasing and summarising

- a** Underline the correct words to complete the conversation.

**NILS** Hi, Dario. So what's this news you wanted to tell me?

**DARIO** Well, it really is quite exciting. <sup>1</sup>*Generally / Basically*, I have decided not to start work just yet.

**NILS** Not work? But I thought you had a job offer?

**DARIO** I have but, you know, we've only just graduated and I've been studying, taking exams, revising and so on for years. <sup>2</sup>*Shortly / In a nutshell*, I fancy doing something different and going somewhere new.

**NILS** <sup>3</sup>*In other words / Said differently*, you're going travelling again.

**DARIO** But not just for pleasure. I did some reading, talked to some people, did some desk research, sent off some emails and, <sup>4</sup>*to cut things back / to cut a long story short*, I'm off to Uganda.

**NILS** Wow! Africa. To do what?

**DARIO** Well, I wanted to do something meaningful, you know, help others. Give something back.

**NILS** Not like people like me then!

**DARIO** No, <sup>5</sup>*what I meant was / my meaning was* that for me it's important to test myself a bit. Get out of the comfort zone. So I'm going to help build a primary school.

**NILS** A school? That will be amazing! You out in the African heat and me at my hot desk at the bank. That just about sums it up. So when are you off?

**DARIO** In two weeks. Can't wait. So much to do.

**NILS** Can I just say ... How shall I put this? I'm very proud.

- b** 3.5 Listen and check.

- c** Complete the sentences with the words in the box. There may be more than one possible answer.

in a nutshell to put it another way that is to say  
in other words to cut a long story short what I meant was

- My job is quite difficult to explain but in a nutshell, I help companies find solutions.
- How did I end up here in China? Well, \_\_\_\_\_, I got a part-time job here twenty years ago.
- People who eat their five a day, \_\_\_\_\_ fruit and vegetables, probably stay fitter.
- Sorry, but that's not my point – \_\_\_\_\_ that the young should support the old.
- People waste so much money on clothes, takeaways, music ... \_\_\_\_\_ stuff they don't need.
- Even the BRIC countries, \_\_\_\_\_ Brazil, India, Russia and China, are struggling.

## 2 PRONUNCIATION

### Consonant groups across two words

- a** Match the underlined letters 1–8 with the consonant groups a–h.

- |   |          |
|---|----------|
| 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <u>h</u> just <u>gr</u> aduated | a /mw/   |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> difficult to <u>ex</u> plain               | b /nf/   |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> <u>des</u> k <u>re</u> search              | c /stf/  |
| 4 <input type="checkbox"/> <u>so</u> me <u>wh</u> ere new             | d /zpr/  |
| 5 <input type="checkbox"/> some <u>thi</u> ng <u>me</u> aningful      | e /kspl/ |
| 6 <input type="checkbox"/> the young <u>sh</u> ould support           | f /gm/   |
| 7 <input type="checkbox"/> not <u>ju</u> st <u>for</u> pleasure       | g /skr/  |
| 8 <input type="checkbox"/> vegetables <u>pr</u> obably                | h /stgr/ |

- b** 3.6 Listen and check.



# 3D Skills for Writing

The view is stunning

## 1 READING

a Read the review. Are the sentences true or false, or is there not enough information to be sure?

- 1 Geographically, Istanbul is perfectly situated.
- 2 The ferries run twenty-four hours a day.
- 3 Locals seem to enjoy eating and drinking.
- 4 You are not really aware of history in a city like this.
- 5 There are not many skyscrapers in the city.
- 6 Some of the palaces have beautiful interiors.

b Read the review again. Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

vastness by boat negotiate  
buildings cruise traffic jams

- 1 Visitors are initially stunned by the vastness of Istanbul.
- 2 The writer loves cities where you can commute \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 A \_\_\_\_\_ along the Bosphorus gives you a historical view of the city.
- 4 There are regular \_\_\_\_\_ on the city's roads.
- 5 The city has an amazing mix of \_\_\_\_\_, from fortresses to mosques.
- 6 One place you must visit is a bazaar, where you can try to \_\_\_\_\_.

## 2 WRITING SKILLS Using descriptive language; Writing briefly

a Complete the text with the words in the box.

breathtaking heart-stopping freshly baked  
highly recommended mouth-watering long weekend  
stunning views value-for-money

### ALAN B FROM MANCHESTER

We chose the Doubletree Hilton for our recent <sup>1</sup> long weekend in Istanbul and we were not disappointed. On arrival, we were presented with <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ cookies and then shown our room with <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of the sea and the Princes' Islands in the distance. We were on the Asian side, which meant there were slightly fewer tourists, but within a stone's throw of the hotel were streets full of restaurants all serving <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ dishes. Access to all the tourist attractions was by a <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ taxi ride through busy traffic and enormous crowds, where people are moving across you at every moment. One other means of reaching the sights is the absolutely packed but <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ ferries. Some of the sights were <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and the mix of up-to-the-minute and back-in-time makes Istanbul a must-see city. We think it's <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

★★★★★

👍 3 likes

## TRAVEL

### CITY BREAK OF THE WEEK ...



# Istanbul

With one foot in Europe and the other in Asia, Istanbul is undoubtedly one of the greatest and largest cosmopolitan cities in the world. Whether you arrive from the airport on the east or the west, you will be stunned by the sheer size of the city. Its perfect geographic position has made it a target for emperors throughout history and nothing takes you back in time more than a cruise along the Bosphorus, the river which not only divides the city but also acts as its lifeblood, ferrying thousands of commuters back and forth all day long. There is nothing to beat a city where you can go to work by ferry, relaxing on the water for half an hour at the beginning of your day.

Throughout the city, the traffic is loud and frequently gridlocked, taxis and buses fight for space and angry motorists use their horns liberally. Yet wherever you go, people are continually taking time out from the bustle of the city, to sip tea or coffee, grab a cake or a kebab or simply stop to chat.

The tourist sees history all around, from the wooded slopes leading down to the waterfront, or the imposing fortresses atop the hills. Everywhere are the most ornate and intricate mosques of great architectural splendour, set amid the rapidly growing new commercial buildings soaring to the sky.

The smells and sounds of the city will be a lasting memory, as will the picturesque waterfront walks and the sumptuous décor of some of the palaces. Haggle in the bazaars, smell the fragrance of the spices, be amazed by the sheer size of the city. Have no doubt, Istanbul will delight you.

## 3 WRITING

a Write a review (200 words) of a recent trip you have made to post on a travel website. Remember to use descriptive phrases to describe the place and your accommodation. Use these notes to help you:

- Introduce the destination. History? Size? Sights? Access?
- Describe your accommodation. Type? Price? Facilities?
- What was good and what was bad?

# UNIT 3

## Reading and listening extension

### 1 READING

**a** Read the blog. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences about it.

1 work because / adventurous / the author / he is / loves his

2 from working / doing expedition / very different / in a hospital / medicine is

3 on an expedition / would benefit / the author thinks / from working / that all doctors

**b** Read the blog again. Tick (✓) the correct answer.

1 The author feels that he has ...

- a ☐ been able to choose his career.
- b ☒ been lucky with his job.
- c ☐ been self-indulgent in his work.

2 He has worked in ...

- a ☐ a wide variety of landscapes.
- b ☐ mountainous regions.
- c ☐ the places he likes most.

3 For an expedition doctor, medical skills are ...

- a ☐ as important as practical skills.
- b ☐ more important than practical skills.
- c ☐ less important than practical skills.

4 Expedition doctors sometimes have to use unusual techniques because ...

- a ☐ they keep their equipment in a rucksack.
- b ☐ things can happen that they don't expect.
- c ☐ they don't have the resources of a hospital.

5 On his first training course, the author ...

- a ☐ learned about caring for people's teeth.
- b ☐ had to pull out someone's tooth.
- c ☐ decided he didn't want to be a dentist.

6 The author works for ethical companies because ...

- a ☐ he wants to make sure that his clients are safe at all times during the expedition.
- b ☐ he feels uncomfortable about the difference between rich tourists and poor local people.
- c ☐ they organise expeditions in the remote areas he enjoys visiting.

**c** Imagine you are doing your job, or a job you would like to have, in a different country or in difficult conditions. Write a blog post about it. Include the answers to these questions:

- Where are you working?
- Who are you working with?
- What is the landscape like?
- What are the challenges?
- What do you enjoy or dislike about the job?

## Trust me – I'm an expedition doctor

Ever since I was a young child, I've had a taste for adventure, but I never imagined I'd be able to indulge this passion at regular intervals because of my chosen career.

My work as an expedition doctor has taken me all over the world, from mosquito-infested swamps in Botswana to the untouched wilderness of Antarctica. However, my favourite trips, and the ones in which I now specialise, are those involving mountains. Never do I feel more inspired by nature than when I look up at their towering peaks and begin to prepare myself mentally for the challenges ahead.

I trained as a doctor in the UK, but there was little in that training to prepare me for strapping up a broken leg during a storm on the almost sheer side of a mountain! In fact, I'd say that medical skills come some way down the list of job requirements, after stamina, flexibility, problem-solving and communication.

This kind of medicine is a million miles away from the controlled, sterile environment of a hospital, and your medical kit basically consists of whatever you can carry, so you sometimes have to be prepared to improvise. For example, I've learned that some drugs can be used for several conditions, and I've even had to resort to cutting branches off a small tree to make a splint to support a broken arm.

That isn't to say that you can't train to be an expedition doctor; on the contrary, there are some excellent courses available. Not only do they teach medical techniques, but also practical skills such as carrying out risk assessments, crossing rivers safely and using satellite phones. The first course I did included a module on expedition dentistry, though I must admit I still don't like the idea of pulling out someone's tooth!

I do most of my work for adventure holiday companies, travelling to remote places. When I started out, these holidays were quite rare, but they have become much more mainstream now that we've all seen celebrities climbing Kilimanjaro or watched reality shows about people surviving in jungles.

I do have mixed feelings about all these people with large amounts of disposable income coming to impoverished areas just for their own enjoyment, so I try to make sure that the companies I work for have high ethical standards and benefit the local communities. And of course, tourism provides employment, and also opens the eyes of affluent visitors to the hardship that many people are forced to endure.

I realise that this kind of life isn't for everyone, but I'd recommend that all doctors try it at least once, if only to make them appreciate the comforts of their usual working environment!





## 2 LISTENING

**a** **3.7** Listen to Gemma and her mum talking about adventurous women. Tick (✓) the correct answer.

- Which sentence best summarises Gemma's attitude?
  - ☐ She thinks that life had more potential for excitement in the past.
  - ☐ Their stories make her want excitement in her own life.
  - ☐ She is disappointed that her mum isn't more adventurous.
- Which sentence best summarises her mum's attitude?
  - ☐ She thinks that most of the world's challenges have already been achieved.
  - ☐ She focuses on the negative aspects of adventure.
  - ☐ She is worried that Gemma will put herself in danger.

**b** **3.7** Listen again. Match people 1–4 with jobs a–d.

- |   |                      |
|---|----------------------|
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> Gertrude Bell        | a astronaut          |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Amelia Earhart       | b pilot              |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> Martha Gellhorn      | c journalist         |
| 4 <input type="checkbox"/> Valentina Tereshkova | d government adviser |

**c** Are the sentences true or false, or is there not enough information to be sure?

- Gemma's mum has travelled in jungles and deserts.
- Gemma is impressed by the fact that many explorers have become famous.
- Gertrude Bell's role in shaping modern Iraq was extremely positive.
- A lot of men had flown across the Atlantic before Amelia Earhart did it.
- Gemma's mum thinks that activities like Amelia Earhart's are too dangerous.
- She says that Gemma isn't rich enough to be an explorer.
- Martha Gellhorn reported mainly on wars in America during the Great Depression.
- Gemma thinks that environmental problems will force us into more space exploration.

**d** Write a conversation between two people who are discussing the challenges of going to the Moon. Think about these questions or use ideas of your own:

- Would the people be interested in taking part in an expedition to the Moon? Why / Why not?
- What do they think would be the main challenges?
- How would they feel if someone in their family went to the Moon?

# Review and extension

## 1 GRAMMAR and VOCABULARY

Correct the errors in the underlined words.

- The journey not only will be longer but more expensive.  
*Not only will the journey be longer but more expensive.*
- The staff not only were helpful but very patient.
- He knew that nobody was to notice he was missing for at least two hours.
- Under no circumstances confidential documents should be removed from the building.
- The teachers were never available when we had needed them.
- The atmosphere was really strange, as if something awful would happen.
- Never before we have received complaints.
- I would like a trial period. Only then I will be sure if I like the job.
- I became very upset when the coach had broken down and the trip was cancelled.
- As the number of homes increased the amount of wood land decreased.
- Fields cover the lower valley and moorlands cover the hills.
- The film shows the beauty of the rain-forest set to music.

## 2 WORDPOWER Idioms: Landscapes

Rewrite the sentences. Replace the underlined words with the words in the box. Make any changes needed.

get bogged down   be swamped   ~~a drop in the ocean~~  
an uphill struggle   be out of the woods

- I'm trying to save money to buy a car, but the amount I have so far is nowhere near enough.  
*I'm trying to save money to buy a car, but the amount I have so far is a drop in the ocean.*
- I found maths really difficult at school. I tried really hard, but I never seemed to make any progress.
- My cat has been really ill, but the vet has told us that her life is no longer in danger. The kids will be really pleased!
- My husband is really stressed – he's got so much work on at the moment.
- My sister's really good at looking at a problem and seeing a solution – I just get too involved in the detail.



## REVIEW YOUR PROGRESS

Look again at Review your progress on p.42 of the Student's Book. How well can you do these things now?

3 = very well   2 = well   1 = not so well

### I CAN ...

- |   |                          |
|---|--------------------------|
| emphasise positive and negative experiences | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| describe journeys and landscapes            | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| paraphrase and summarise                    | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| write a travel review.                      | <input type="checkbox"/> |

# 4A That little voice in your head

## 1 GRAMMAR Noun phrases

a Put the words in the correct order to complete the introduction to a podcast.

1 Gloria Green, / best-selling author / guides, / the / healthy living / of / is today's guest .  
Gloria Green, the best-selling author of healthy living guides, is today's guest.

2 published / recently / her / book, 'Staying Alive', is a complete A-Z of health and fitness .  
 \_\_\_\_\_

3 getting / of / people / ages / all / to eat and drink sensibly has become / life's / work / her .  
 \_\_\_\_\_

4 her / life / story / rags-to-riches / is living proof that dreams can come true .  
 \_\_\_\_\_

5 easy-to-follow / her / apps / keep-fit / top sales charts all over the world .  
 \_\_\_\_\_

b Improve the underlined sections by rewriting them as a single noun phrase. Use the patterns in the box.

- I went to see a film. It was great. It was science fiction.  
a great science fiction film
- And he's won the match with that shot which he judged perfectly!
- Perhaps one day they'll be able to solve the problem that the climate is changing.
- Have you ever tried cooking anything Thai – something like a green curry?
- These paintings are the life's work of my uncle.
- I won't get bored at the weekend – I've got to do plenty of things.

### Noun patterns

- article + adjective + compound noun + noun
- determiner + adverb + adjective + noun
- article + compound noun + noun
- pronoun + preposition + article + adjective + adjective + noun
- possessive + noun + 's + noun + 's + noun
- noun + to + infinitive



## 2 VOCABULARY Instinct and reason

a Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

subconsciously on impulse rational spontaneous  
 gut instincts think it over **weigh up** think twice

- A How do you decide to buy something?  
 B Well, it depends on what it is.  
 A How do you mean?  
 B If it's a house, for instance, I'd <sup>1</sup> weigh up the advantages and disadvantages first and then <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ for a while.  
 A So you tend to think logically?  
 B Yes, I suppose I'm a <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ thinker. How about you?  
 A Well, I'd probably go with my <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ in that situation.  
 B So you'd buy a house <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, without thinking?  
 A Not necessarily, but I'd know that <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ it was the right thing to do. Don't you ever take a <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ decision?  
 B Yes, of course. I wouldn't <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ about buying a new pair of shoes! I love to keep up with fashion!

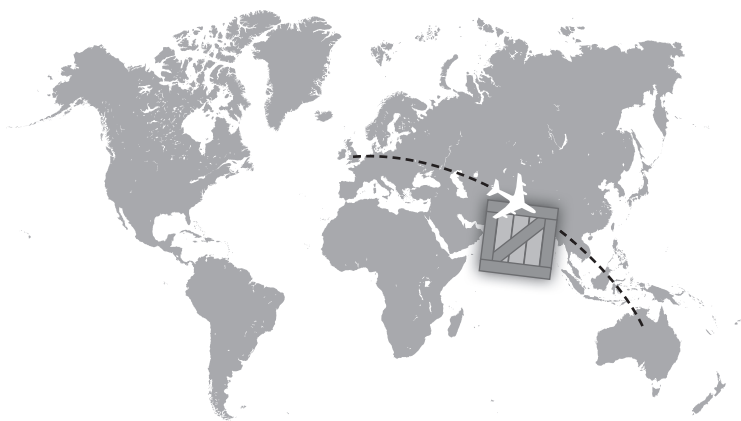
b Underline the correct words to complete the sentences.

- She is always very *personable* / reasonable / *capable* and fair in her judgment.
- A lot of students are *self-conscious* / *self-employed* / *selfish* when they make mistakes.
- Japanese employees are renowned for being *conscious* / *conscientious* / *content*.
- A lot of people are very *sensitive* / *senseless* / *sensible* and don't like criticism.
- Some people are totally *emotional* / *rational* / *subjective* and don't allow feelings to interfere.
- Actors appear to be *self-controlled* / *self-confident* / *selfless* but in fact they are often shy.
- I am very generous whereas my brother is very *unconscious* / *self-conscious* / *money-conscious*.
- The *senseless* / *sensitive* / *sensible* approach is to take our time and think it through.

# 4B He got himself locked in a shed

## 1 GRAMMAR *have / get* passives

- a Complete the story. Match 1–8 with a–h to make sentences.



- 1 ☒ **h** In the 1950s, an Australian got
  - 2 ☐ While saving up for a return flight home to Australia, he had
  - 3 ☐ Finding himself with no money, he got a friend
  - 4 ☐ He had it specially
  - 5 ☐ They had the crate
  - 6 ☐ In India, customs officials had
  - 7 ☐ On arrival, he had hoped
  - 8 ☐ He got himself
- a designed so he could sit or lie back in it during the journey.
  - b labelled as paint for a fictitious shoe company in Australia.
  - c the crate unloaded and it was then left upside down in the sun.
  - d his wallet stolen and had no money for a ticket.
  - e driven from the airport downtown and got home in time for his daughter's birthday.
  - f to have the invoice paid cash on delivery but the crate was left in a shed and he escaped.
  - g to build a packaging case large enough for him to sit in.
  - h himself flown back home from London not as a passenger but as a package.

- b Underline the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 My hair is getting very long. I will have to get it cut / *get it to cut* soon.
- 2 When I was living abroad as a student, I used to get my parents *pay* / to pay for calls.
- 3 Our house was getting too small for the family so we *had it extended* / got it to extend.
- 4 She is starting up a new business and is getting her friends *to help* / helped her.
- 5 That suit fits so perfectly you must have *had made it* / had it made for you.
- 6 The offices needed renovating so we had an architect *draw* / drawing up some plans.
- 7 When we moved we got *to forward our mail* / our mail forwarded to our new address.
- 8 I had had the room *to set up* / set up in advance so we were ready to start on time.

## 2 VOCABULARY Memory

- a Complete the conversation with the words in the box. There may be more than one possible answer.

painful memory   east   a vivid memory   come to mind  
a lasting memory   slipped   reminds   treasure

- A If you <sup>1</sup> cast your mind back to your early life as a child, what do you remember?
- B I find the smell of cut grass always <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ me of my childhood.
- A Do you have <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of that time?
- B Well, to be honest many things are just a distant memory now. Although I suppose one thing I do <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ is the memory of family holidays by the sea.
- A Do you have any recollection at all of your school days?
- B Well, I have <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of the day I started school. One boy wouldn't stop crying. I still remember some of my teachers as well but other things have completely <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ my mind.
- A Do any of your school friends <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_?
- B I do have rather a <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of a friend who one day moved away suddenly and I never saw again.

- b Underline the correct words to complete the story.

When I was very young, I <sup>1</sup> say / remind / remember we always went to France on holiday. In those days, it was quite unusual to go abroad, but I have a vivid <sup>2</sup> memory / souvenir / photo of our car being lifted by crane onto the ferry which would take us across the sea from Southampton to Cherbourg. Another image which <sup>3</sup> comes / goes / flashes to mind is seeing the red-shuttered hotel for the first time as we arrived at our destination after what seemed like an incredibly long journey. We used to collect sugar wrappers and coasters as <sup>4</sup> items / souvenirs / memories and I will never forget buying small plastic cars to take home. In the evenings, we would walk along the beach and I have a <sup>5</sup> vague / dull / thick memory of paddling in the ocean at sunset. I also <sup>6</sup> recall / remind / think another time when my brothers put me in a rowing boat and pretended to push me out to sea. I will never <sup>7</sup> forget / forgo / forgive the sheer terror as they waved me off! I am getting old now but I still have my photo album to <sup>8</sup> jog / run / tip my memory. The photos <sup>9</sup> remind / remember / recall me of a very special time of my life.

## 3 PRONUNCIATION Sentence stress

- a 4.1 Listen and underline the stressed syllables in the sentences.

- 1 I remember when I was very young.
- 2 We always went on holiday to France.
- 3 In the evening we would walk along the beach.
- 4 My brothers put me in a rowing boat.
- 5 I still have my photo album to jog my memory.



# 4C Everyday English

I see where you're coming from

## 1 USEFUL LANGUAGE

### Being tactful in formal discussions

- a Complete the conversation with the phrases in the box.

What did you think  
I see where you're coming from  
No offence intended  
In fact, if you don't mind me saying so  
OK, I take your point  
I beg to differ  
With all due respect

- A <sup>1</sup> What did you think of the presentation?  
B <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ but I found it dull.  
A I think <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ but I  
<sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.  
B So you found it interesting?  
A Well, not exactly interesting, but dull is a little harsh.  
B <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, it's much better to be frank. It was boring.  
A <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. It wasn't that interesting but we need to be more supportive.  
B I disagree. <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, he needs to be told.  
A I'll leave that to you then. You're his manager!



- b 4.2 Listen and check.

- c Put the words in the correct order to make the responses. Add any punctuation needed.

- 1 A They really make us work hard here, don't they?  
B it / about / me / tell .  
Tell me about it.  
2 A The customers are quite demanding as well.  
B telling / you're / me .  
3 A It would be good to make a few changes, wouldn't it?  
B due / respect / only just / all / with / started / you've .  
4 A The problem is we don't quite have enough people in the team.  
B take / I do / quite new / you're / your / still / but / point .  
5 A Do you think we should tell the management?  
B me saying / it's probably / don't mind / best to wait / so / if you .  
6 A You think I should wait a while?  
B head / on / nail / the / hit / right / you've / the .

## 2 PRONUNCIATION

### Homophones in words and connected speech

- a 4.3 Listen and match the homophones in the box to the underlined words in the sentences.

ate cereal queue died break aloud weak blue

- 1 I have eight brothers. ate  
2 When I was a child, I was only allowed to eat sweets once a week. \_\_\_\_\_  
3 My mother died the sheets blue. \_\_\_\_\_  
4 I had to break very late to avoid an accident. \_\_\_\_\_  
5 I eat out at least three times a week. \_\_\_\_\_  
6 My sister arrived right on cue, just as someone mentioned her name. \_\_\_\_\_  
7 The strong winds blew the parasols over. \_\_\_\_\_  
8 The police are still looking for a serial killer. \_\_\_\_\_

# 4D Skills for Writing

## Where does her talent come from?

### 1 READING

a Read the newspaper article. Are the sentences true or false?

- 1 Italy play in dark blue shirts.
- 2 Tommy is currently living in Italy.
- 3 He played youth international rugby for Scotland.
- 4 He decided he wanted to play for Italy after changing schools.
- 5 When he played against Scotland, some of the Scottish team made jokes.
- 6 He started playing rugby seriously in his teens.
- 7 Both his parents played international rugby.
- 8 He thinks that France is a good place to improve his game.

b Read the article again. Put the events in the order they happened.

- ☐ He moved to France to play rugby for Perpignan.
- ☒ 1 His uncle played for Scotland.
- ☐ He went to South Africa to attend school and play more rugby.
- ☐ He started speaking English when the family moved to England.
- ☐ He played his first full match for Italy.
- ☐ He was born in Vicenza, Italy.
- ☐ He played for Italy against Scotland.

### 2 WRITING SKILLS Organising information; Showing time relationships

a Read the article again. Look at the pairs of sentences. What is the interval between events? Tick (✓) the correct box.

|   | Immediate | Short interval | Long interval |
|---|-----------|----------------|---------------|
| 1 Being born. Starting to speak English.                            |           |                | ✓             |
| 2 Speaking to the coach. Deciding to play for Italy.                |           |                |               |
| 3 Deciding to play for Italy. Being selected by Italy.              |           |                |               |
| 4 Changing schools. Realising he wanted to play professional rugby. |           |                |               |
| 5 Playing sports. Playing rugby.                                    |           |                |               |
| 6 Choosing to play for Italy. Playing against Scotland.             |           |                |               |



## A CHOICE OF BLUE

Tommaso Allan, Tommy to his friends, is a rugby union player who made his full international debut in the light blue shirt of Italy in November 2013 against Australia. Since then, he has been a regular member of the team, much to the disappointment of Scottish fans who had hoped he would wear the dark blue of Scotland.

When we meet in a café in Perpignan in south-west France, where he plays professional rugby, he explains how things came to happen. 'I had played for Scotland at most of the youth ages, under-nineteens and under-twenties and so on, but when I moved to France in the summer of 2013, I still wasn't sure which international team I would play for.' It was only when the Italian coach asked him if he wanted to play for Italy that he made up his mind and chose Italy. This decision was closely followed by his selection for the match against Australia. Soon after that, he was playing for Italy *against* Scotland and thoroughly enjoyed it, despite a certain amount of mickey-taking from players he knew on the Scottish team. 'My flatmate is Scottish so I am used to it,' he adds.

Tommy was born in Vicenza in Italy in 1993 to an Italian mother and a Scottish father. Until he was eight, he lived in Italy and Italian was his first language. It was only when he moved to England in 2001 that he started speaking English. As a kid he played football and basketball and didn't particularly like rugby despite it being in his blood. 'My uncle played for Scotland in 1990 and 1991 and then for South Africa and my dad was a good player too,' he points out, adding that his mother also played for the Italian women's team! So it wasn't until his teens that he started playing rugby seriously, playing for a club at weekends and in school holidays flying to South Africa to attend a rugby-playing school there. 'I learned such a lot from my time in South Africa and I still go back regularly,' he tells me. Having changed schools in England to play more rugby, he soon realised he wanted to make a living from the game.

So how is he enjoying life in France? 'It's a beautiful country to live,' he says as he sips a glass of sparkling water. 'They take their rugby very seriously here and I have a great opportunity to develop my rugby.'

### 3 WRITING

a Write an article (250 words) about an interview with someone famous. Use direct quotes, time expressions and reported answers. Remember to include:

- the setting of the interview
- what they do
- how they discovered their interest or ability
- their recent experiences and future plans.



# UNIT 4

## Reading and listening extension

### 1 READING

- a Read the article about decision-making. Complete this summary of the article with the words in the box.

poor   mental   rational   useful   better

In order to make <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ decisions, you need plenty of <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ energy. People with a lot of problems often make <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ decisions. There are several <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ strategies that can help us make decisions, but sometimes it is <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ simply to do what our instincts tell us.

- b Read the article again. Match the paragraph numbers 1–7 with the summaries a–g.

- a ☐ Says why the time of day affects our decision-making  
 b ☐ Stresses the importance of our beliefs and opinions  
 c ☒ 1 Asks why people are bad at making decisions  
 d ☐ Gives an idea for uncovering our inner thoughts  
 e ☐ Explains why people with difficult lives may make bad decisions  
 f ☐ Talks about the way we use facts in our decision-making  
 g ☐ Gives advice on how to make a decision less personal

- c Read the text again. Tick (✓) the correct answer.

- Why is it surprising that people make bad decisions?
  - ☐ Everyone has time to make good decisions.
  - ☒ We should be able to understand the factors involved and see which are important.
  - ☐ We should learn from other people's decisions.
- Why do people with difficult lives suffer more 'decision fatigue' than other people?
  - ☐ They do not have enough education about health and finance.
  - ☐ They have to make more decisions than others.
  - ☐ They use a lot of mental energy for everyday life.
- Why is it a good idea to pretend a friend is making the decision?
  - ☐ It helps you to step back from the problem.
  - ☐ You will want to give your friend good advice.
  - ☐ Your friend usually makes good decisions and you want to be like him or her.
- Why do people often want as much information as they can get?
  - ☐ It helps them list advantages and disadvantages.
  - ☐ More information always means a better decision.
  - ☐ It is part of human nature to want facts.
- How can flipping a coin help you?
  - ☐ It makes a choice for you so you don't have to.
  - ☐ It makes you realise that you do have a preference.
  - ☐ It shows that a random decision can be a good one.
- Why should we consider how we'll feel about a decision in later life?
  - ☐ To make sensible decisions about spending money.
  - ☐ To avoid being sorry about the way we have lived.
  - ☐ We will be wiser when we are older.

### HOW TO MAKE

## good decisions

**1** We all like to think that we are rational thinkers, but poor decisions and choices are evident all around us: staying in bad relationships or boring jobs, taking up smoking, eating too much junk food, taking out loans we know we can't repay; the list goes on. So why can't we make better decisions? Surely we know how to weigh up the advantages and disadvantages in a situation and come to a sensible conclusion? One reason appears to be what psychologists call 'decision fatigue': the idea that we all have a limited store of energy for making decisions and exerting self-control.

**2** Studies are increasingly finding evidence that our life circumstances play a huge part in our ability to be rational. If you are ground down by everyday struggles, you have less mental energy for good decisions. These findings go a long way to explaining why people with problems such as poverty or poor housing so often appear to make irrational decisions – for example, in relation to their health or financial affairs.

**3** However, this research does point to the fact that deciding things early in the day is likely to lead to better outcomes. Most of us will have had the experience of going to bed with a seemingly unsolvable problem, only to wake up with a flash of inspiration the next morning. So decisions made when we feel least tired are more likely to be the right ones.

**4** Another worthwhile strategy is to pretend that you are advising a friend (who can be imaginary!), rather than relating decisions to your own life. This creates a distance between you and the issues in question, and can help you to think logically rather than emotionally.

**5** People often advise making lists of pros and cons, and then prioritising the items in each list. This can certainly be helpful, but we need to be careful not to over-think every decision. The human mind is programmed to hate uncertainty, so many of us feel compelled to gather as much information as we possibly can before making a decision. However, we can overestimate the value of information, and sometimes it is better simply to go with our gut instinct.

**6** Try this simple experiment: take a coin and assign a decision to each side. Then flip the coin and before it lands, ask yourself which way you are *hoping* it will come down. This way you may find that you knew the answer subconsciously all along.

**7** Perhaps the most important thing we can do to minimise the possibility of regret is to make sure that our decisions are in line with our life values; in other words, to have a life vision and be true to it. Instead of asking ourselves questions such as 'Which option is safer?' or 'Which option is best financially?', it is far better to ask 'How will I feel about this when I'm 70?'

- d Write a short article for a popular magazine about how to make decisions. Remember to include:

- examples of some common decisions that people have to make
- a list of top tips
- the reason for each tip.





## Review and extension

### 1 GRAMMAR and VOCABULARY

Correct the errors in the underlined words.

- Starting work with the new company can be quite nerve-racking.  
*Starting work with a new company can be quite nerve-racking.*
- The first day of the group in London was hard to forget; we were outsiders in a strange city.
- The sudden increase in personal computers' numbers made the planet more connected.
- We can't pay anyone else, but I'll help you have the job done on time.
- Better care means the old people are living longer these days.
- He is a very racional person – always thinking things through very logically and unemotionally.
- She is extremely sensible to what people say and often takes things much too personally.
- The sales manager is very self confident. In fact, he sometimes comes across as arrogant.
- When we got lost, we didn't panic – in fact, we were very sensitive and just retraced our steps.
- They are very conscient of what they eat. They won't eat any processed foods.

### 2 LISTENING

a 4.4 Listen to the conversation between Leila and Hannah. Complete the sentences.

- Leila felt embarrassed when she cried in the museum.
- Leila's grandmother died when she was \_\_\_\_\_.
- When she went to visit, her grandmother used to have a \_\_\_\_\_ delivered.
- Leila and Hannah watched a programme about people with \_\_\_\_\_ problems.
- The programme was about using \_\_\_\_\_ to trigger memories.
- Implicit and explicit memories are stored in different parts of the \_\_\_\_\_.
- When Hannah was younger, she travelled in \_\_\_\_\_.
- Leila thought of a song she associates with her \_\_\_\_\_.

b 4.4 Listen again. Tick (✓) the correct box.

|  | Yes | No |
|--|-----|----|
| 1 Does Leila have a clear memory of her grandmother's sitting room?  | ✓   |    |
| 2 Does she remember what her grandmother's house smelled like?   |     |    |
| 3 Has Hannah had similar experiences of something triggering a memory?   |     |    |
| 4 Do explicit memories take conscious effort?  |     |    |
| 5 Is the part of the brain that stores explicit memories stronger than the part that stores implicit memories? |     |    |
| 6 Does music have to be high quality to trigger profound emotions?   |     |    |
| 7 Does Hannah find that classical music triggers memories for her as much as pop music?                        |     |    |
| 8 Can pieces of music remind you of particular people?   |     |    |

c Write a conversation between two people discussing things that trigger memories for them. Use these questions to help you:

- Are the experiences triggered by music? By other sounds? By smell, taste, or visual means?
- Are strong emotions triggered by one of these things?
- Why do you think they have this effect?

### 2 WORDPOWER *mind*

Rewrite the sentences. Replace the underlined words with the words in the box. Make any changes needed.

put one's mind to it   cross one's mind  
bear something in mind   read someone's mind  
speak one's mind

- I'm starting a computer course. I don't know anything about coding, but if I try really hard, I'll figure it out.  
*I'm starting a computer course. I don't know anything about coding, but if I put my mind to it, I'll figure it out.*
- Thanks for letting me know that you enjoy role play – that's useful to know for next lesson.
- If you don't agree with an action, you've got to give your opinion, otherwise things will never change.
- I can't believe how angry my friend is with me. She hates dancing so I didn't even think of inviting her to my party!
- You should have told me if you wanted me to buy chocolate when I went shopping – I don't know what you're thinking.



### REVIEW YOUR PROGRESS

Look again at Review your progress on p.54 of the Student's Book. How well can you do these things now?

3 = very well   2 = well   1 = not so well

#### I CAN ...

|                                      |                          |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| talk about using instinct and reason | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| talk about memories and remembering  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| use tact in formal discussions       | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| write a profile article.             | <input type="checkbox"/> |

# 5A A place where you have to look over your shoulder

## 1 GRAMMAR Relative clauses

a Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

why ~~most of which~~ who which all of whom  
where the result of which whose



- 1 A pickpocket recently admitted around a hundred offences, most of which had been committed on London streets.
- 2 A German tourist \_\_\_\_\_ wallet had been stolen agreed to meet the thief.
- 3 A journalist interviewed other tourists on the street \_\_\_\_\_ the incident had taken place.
- 4 He talked to three tourists \_\_\_\_\_ were carrying valuables in a rucksack.
- 5 One tourist, \_\_\_\_\_ preferred not to give his name, had a wallet in his back pocket.
- 6 There are obvious reasons \_\_\_\_\_ tourists are such an easy target.
- 7 A lot of tourists carry cash, \_\_\_\_\_ is not very sensible.
- 8 There was a poster campaign last year, \_\_\_\_\_ was a drop in crime figures.

b Match 1–8 with a–h to make sentences.

- 1 ☒ f We recruited a lot of staff last year,
  - 2 ☐ I don't want to say anything
  - 3 ☐ The menu has a limited number of dishes,
  - 4 ☐ Whoever is last to leave
  - 5 ☐ Spring is a time of year
  - 6 ☐ The club takes on a lot of young players,
  - 7 ☐ She was late to work on her first day,
  - 8 ☐ I've met a lot of people in my life,
- a a few of whom are now close friends.  
b should switch off the lights.  
c a percentage of whom turn professional.  
d I always look forward to.  
e which was a bad sign.  
f some of whom have started really well.  
g most of which I've tried.  
h which could be misunderstood.

## 2 VOCABULARY Crime and justice

a Complete the text with the words in the box.

assault community controlled convicted life  
~~possession~~ psychiatric sentence served solitary

Our reactions to crime are very personal, depending on our social situation and our upbringing, according to a recent report from Swedish psychologists. Most people consider non-violent crimes, such as <sup>1</sup> possession of a <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ substance, to be minor compared with crimes which involve injury to people, such as violent <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. Views on punishment are also changing, with the majority now seeing <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ service as the most beneficial punishment for both the offender and the victims. Increasingly, it is felt that punishments like being held in <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ confinement or being sentenced to <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ imprisonment are less appropriate, with <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ help being seen as necessary to rehabilitate criminals. It was also felt that those <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of certain crimes should have it removed from their record when the <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ has been <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, or at least soon after.

b Underline the correct words to complete the conversation.

- A People commit all types of crime today. How do you think we should deal with these offenders?
- B Well, it depends on the crime and the person who has been found <sup>1</sup> wrong / guilty of the crime.
- A What about someone who has been <sup>2</sup> punished / sentenced to life imprisonment? Should they <sup>3</sup> deliver / serve the full sentence?
- B In my opinion, a <sup>4</sup> cut / reduced sentence for good behaviour should be a possibility. Such offenders need to receive one-to-one <sup>5</sup> counselling / punishment.
- A Do you think offenders need to be brought face-to-face with their <sup>6</sup> crimes / victims?
- B Yes, I'd agree that in certain situations a meeting could help both the victim and the offender.

## 3 PRONUNCIATION

Sound and spelling: s and ss

a 5.1 Listen to the words in the box. How are the bold letters pronounced in each word? Complete the table with the words.

~~comparison~~ mission occasion Asian person Russian  
~~passion~~ mason basin derision pressure collision

| Sound 1 /s/<br>(e.g. <i>lesson</i> ) | Sound 2 /ʃ/<br>(e.g. <i>session</i> ) | Sound 3 /z/<br>(e.g. <i>measure</i> ) |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| comparison                           |                                       |                                       |

# 5B It's essential to have the right qualifications

## 1 GRAMMAR

### Willingness, obligation and necessity

a Complete the text using the words in the box.

aren't really expected   are vital   English is mandatory  
~~has had to~~   was required   must do   is essential  
 should be   is called upon

Samya is a very rare person. At the age of twenty-seven she is a pilot with Emirates, one of the world's fastest growing airlines. Globally, only 3% of pilots are female, so Samya <sup>1</sup> has had to show great courage and determination to realise her dream of flying passengers all over the planet.

'Women <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to be in the cockpit,' she says, 'particularly in this part of the world.'

So how did she make it? For her twenty-first birthday present she was given flying lessons and within six months she had been accepted onto the Emirates pilot training scheme. A lot of hard work <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ but she made good progress and got a lot of support from her male classmates.

'A pilot <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to make a lot of quick decisions and a calm manner <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, particularly when flying in bad weather,' Samya goes on. 'Good communication skills <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ because you are constantly in communication with your co-pilot and air-traffic control, for which good knowledge of <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. Many passengers are surprised to see that Samya is their pilot and this adds a little pressure. 'As a woman I feel I <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ an even better job so that I make a good impression not just for the airline but for my gender. I feel there <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ more female pilots and that I am a role model for girls who might want to follow the same career.'



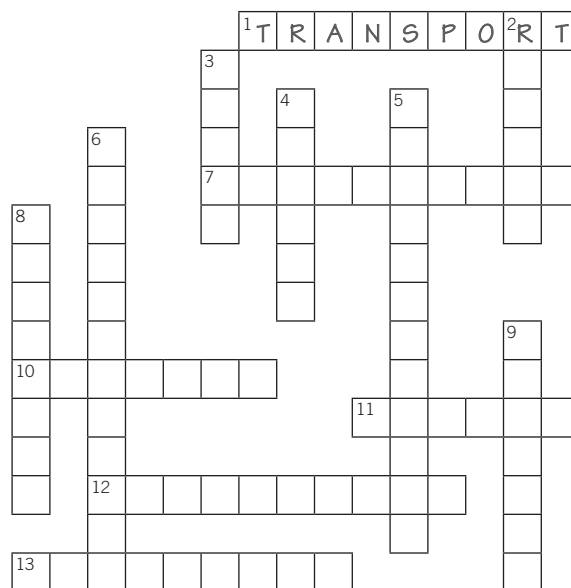
b Underline the correct words to complete the text.

I know a lot of people think my job working on a trawler is quite dangerous but my employers <sup>1</sup> are intended / are required / must to do a thorough risk assessment to make sure it is as safe as possible. We are away for up to two weeks at a time because we are <sup>2</sup> expected / known / wanted to come back to port only when we have caught our target weight of fish. We <sup>3</sup> are / have to / need work twelve to fourteen hours a day and an ability to work even when seasick is <sup>4</sup> definite / optional / mandatory. Strength and good balance are <sup>5</sup> fine / essential / useless and <sup>6</sup> you can / you've got / you must to be able to work as part of a team. Sleeping facilities are limited so a willingness to share bunks is <sup>7</sup> good / needy / vital. We live and work in close proximity to each other so a good sense of humour is also a <sup>8</sup> rule / use / requirement.



## 2 VOCABULARY Employment

a Complete the crossword puzzle. Use the clues to name the employment sectors.



### → Across

- 1 trains, road, air, etc.
- 7 relating to computers
- 10 hotels, cruises, resorts, sightseeing
- 11 owned and managed by a government
- 12 producing goods for sale
- 13 banking, accounting, investment

### ↓ Down

- 2 selling to the general public
- 3 Marriot, Hilton, Sofitel, etc.
- 4 oil, gas, solar, etc.
- 5 to do with farming, crops, livestock
- 6 building houses, bridges, etc.
- 8 Boeing, Airbus, etc.
- 9 owned by individuals

## 3 PRONUNCIATION Word stress

a 5.2 Listen. What is the stress pattern of the underlined words? Tick (✓) the correct box.

|  | 0o | o0 |
|--|----|----|
| 1 Could you give me your <u>contact</u> details?                           | ✓  |    |
| 2 We couldn't find any <u>record</u> of a meeting on that date.            |    |    |
| 3 We <u>export</u> about 45% of our production.                            |    |    |
| 4 We are starting the <u>research</u> in Liberia next month.               |    |    |
| 5 We need to <u>increase</u> the number of international contracts we get. |    |    |
| 6 We <u>produce</u> most of our own vegetables.                            |    |    |



# 50 Everyday English

If I remember rightly

## 1 USEFUL LANGUAGE

### Recalling and speculating

a Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

hazard impression memory  
presumably suppose stands

- 1 **A** The beach was stony. There was no sand at all.  
**B** Suppose you'd known, would you still have gone on holiday there?
- 2 **A** Who painted that picture?  
**B** I'm not sure. I'd \_\_\_\_\_ a guess at Monet.
- 3 **A** What time does the wedding ceremony start?  
**B** \_\_\_\_\_ it'll be some time in the morning.
- 4 **A** That trip to Switzerland was amazing, wasn't it?  
**B** Oh, yeah. What \_\_\_\_\_ out most in my mind were the Alps. The views were stunning.
- 5 **A** Who organised the golf trip last year?  
**B** If my \_\_\_\_\_ serves me correctly, it was Lisa Feng.
- 6 **A** The flight leaves on Thursday at 4 pm from terminal 2.  
**B** Are you sure? I was under the \_\_\_\_\_ that all flights to North America leave from terminal 1.

b Match the statements and questions 1–6 with the responses a–f.

- 1 ☒ I thought I remembered you saying you played squash.
  - 2 ☐ Have you been to any of the Greek Islands?
  - 3 ☐ Imagine you'd known the price was going down. Would you still have bought?
  - 4 ☐ Judging from your appearance, I'd hazard a guess at thirty.
  - 5 ☐ I was under the impression you spoke French.
  - 6 ☐ I presume you have a degree.
- a No, I don't, although I worked in Paris for a couple of months.  
b Well, actually, I went to university but left after two years.  
c Yes, I have. The one that stands out in my mind is Paphos.  
d That's right. Do you?  
e Very good! Thirty-one next birthday.  
f Well, hindsight is a wonderful thing but I wasn't to know.

c 5.3 Listen and check.

d 5.4 Listen to the sentences and tick (✓) the correct box.

|   | Speculating | Recalling |
|---|-------------|-----------|
| 1 I bet you it'll rain tomorrow just because it's the weekend.          | ✓           |           |
| 2 I was under the impression it was open on Mondays.                    |             |           |
| 3 I'd hazard a guess you work in marketing of some sort.                |             |           |
| 4 I'm guessing you're a sports fan.                                     |             |           |
| 5 I'm sure I remember my father telling me that joke.                   |             |           |
| 6 No doubt you'll be surprised but I am actually Canadian.              |             |           |
| 7 Suppose you'd been born in Germany, how different would your life be? |             |           |
| 8 What stands out for me about the eighties is the music.               |             |           |
| 9 Without a shadow of a doubt, the value of gold will continue to rise. |             |           |

## 2 PRONUNCIATION Main stress

a 5.5 Listen and underline the word with the main stress in each phrase.

- 1 He's not just any footballer ... he's the world's best footballer.
- 2 Some countries simply copy, ... while other countries create.
- 3 It's not just the money ... it's the time and the money.
- 4 I don't know any jokes ... I don't know any good jokes anyway.
- 5 The lesson wasn't just difficult ... it was difficult and boring.



## 5D

## Skills for Writing

It's a way of making the application process more efficient

- 1** The job application process is a lot more complicated than it used to be and applicants need to be ready to show a wide range of skills simply to complete it. What is more, this process might be producing good applicants rather than people who will be able to do a good job.
- 2** In the past, a letter, an application form and a CV were usually enough. You sent them off, together with a reference which might or might not be followed up on. Today's applicants, on the other hand, have to be much better prepared. As well as assessing job opportunities, they need to keep their profile updated on a suitable networking website. A good photo is also useful, probably not the same as the one on Facebook. In addition to updating the profile, they also need to ensure that it is regularly endorsed by people who have worked with them, ideally with a short comment.
- 3** Having seen a possible job, it is vital to apply through the correct route, often a website, and to carry out all the steps in good time. Once the shortlist is ready, the next stage is often an automatically marked online questionnaire and, depending on those results, an application will move on or stop there. What is more, it is worth noting that up to this point there has been very little contact between humans in the whole process.
- 4** At the interview, there is an opportunity to express interest in the job but also to respond to a wide range of questions designed to find out more about the candidates. Besides the standard questions about achievements and aspirations, there will also be at least one simple but potentially quirky question which separates the final candidates. As well as the questions, there might well be a task to carry out. Certain companies have gone further and asked interviewees to read out poetry or extracts from plays in the hope that this brings out other aspects of the candidate's personality. Besides being of dubious value, this is probably quite intrusive.
- 5** I agree that employers need to be absolutely sure about who they recruit, since human resources are one of the major investments firms make. It is important, therefore, that the process is thorough. On the other hand, it is imperative that the system finds the best recruits, not necessarily just those who deal well with the process.

**1 READING**

**a** Read the essay. Underline the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 Job applications have become more *expensive* / *time-consuming*.
- 2 References were *always* / *sometimes* followed up on.
- 3 It is important to keep your *online profile* / *application form* up to date.
- 4 Online questionnaires are usually *automatically* / *manually* assessed.
- 5 At the interview there is often one *odd* / *factual* question.
- 6 Certain interviewers have been known to ask candidates to *sing* / *read aloud*.
- 7 Reading out poetry is *valuable for employers* / *uncomfortable for interviewees*.
- 8 The tone of the concluding paragraph is *enthusiastic* / *cautious*.

**b** Read the essay again. Match the summaries a–e to the paragraphs 1–5.

- a ☐ Author's conclusion
- b ☐ A description of the interview
- c ☒ Author states topic and introduces his point of view
- d ☐ Comparison of past and present requirements
- e ☐ A description of the first part of the recruitment process these days

**2 WRITING SKILLS** Essays;  
Linking: addition and reinforcement

**a** Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

besides as well as furthermore, they  
above in addition moreover

- 1 Online questionnaires are good for preselection.  
Furthermore, they are cheap and easy to set up.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ to keeping your profile updated, it is good to get people to endorse you.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ details of your professional life, it is good to have a short description of other activities you do on your CV.
- 4 It is good to have a recent photo on your profile and, \_\_\_\_\_ all, keep your contact details up to date.
- 5 Your CV should be attractive rather than dense.  
\_\_\_\_\_, too much detail can become tedious.
- 6 The job application process is longer. \_\_\_\_\_, the competition is tougher.

**3 WRITING**

**a** Write a short essay (250 words) on the topic 'How does your online presence help you in the job market?', offering ideas for finding and getting a job. Think about:

- your CV and online profile
- other social media
- personal activities
- some examples to support your ideas.

# UNIT 5

## Reading and listening extension

### 1 READING

a Read the article. Tick (✓) the best definition of 'restorative justice'.

- 1 ☐ A chance for the victim to have an influence on the kind of punishment a criminal is given
- 2 ☐ A meeting where the criminal says sorry to the victim
- 3 ☐ A meeting where the victim and the criminal discuss what happened and its consequences
- 4 ☐ A chance for the criminal to explain to the victim what led him or her to commit the crime

b Read the article again. Tick (✓) the advantages of restorative justice which are mentioned.

- 1 ☒ The criminal can say sorry.
- 2 ☐ It reduces prison costs for the state.
- 3 ☐ The victim gets a more realistic idea of the criminal's character.
- 4 ☐ The criminal understands the effect of his crimes better.
- 5 ☐ The criminal is less likely to commit another crime.
- 6 ☐ The victim and the criminal can support one another in the future.
- 7 ☐ It relieves pressure on the court system.

c Underline the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 Susannah suffered *serious* / minor / *life-threatening* injuries in the attack.
- 2 She was *reluctant* / *eager* / *prepared* to take part in the restorative justice meeting.
- 3 When she met her attacker, she felt *angry* / *pleased* / *relieved*.
- 4 She could tell that he had had a *pleasant* / *badly behaved* / *difficult* life.
- 5 After the meeting, she felt *calmer* / *angrier* / *better informed* about what had happened.
- 6 Susannah's attacker wants to change his *sentence* / *mind* / *behaviour*.

d Write a short essay about youth crime. Use these notes to help you:

- What do you think are the main reasons that young people commit crimes?
- What sort of punishments do you think are appropriate for young people?
- What do you think could be done to reduce levels of youth crime?

## The day I looked my attacker in the eye



By Susannah Brown

One day last summer, I was walking home late at night when a young man jumped out from behind some trees and grabbed my handbag. He knocked me to the ground and I suffered cuts to my face and arms. Thanks to security cameras in the area, the man was quickly arrested and convicted of theft and assault.

But despite being fit and relatively young, I couldn't put the incident out of my mind. I kept looking at my own son and asking myself how someone could do such a thing. My previous optimistic outlook turned to one of general suspicion and my self-confidence had vanished.

So when a woman from the youth service telephoned me and asked if I would be willing to take part in a 'restorative justice' scheme, I jumped at the chance. She explained that it would involve a face-to-face meeting with the youth, who was still serving his prison sentence. I would have the chance to explain how his crime had affected me and to ask him any questions I wanted to.

I was incredibly nervous beforehand, but as soon as I saw my attacker sitting there, looking just as scared as me, I felt a weight lift from my shoulders. I realised that I'd built him up in my mind into an evil and threatening character, when the reality was that he was simply a troubled youth to whom life had so far been fairly unkind.

The idea of restorative justice is that it benefits both the victim and the perpetrator. For me, the crucial thing was to hear his apology. It also enabled me to put the incident in perspective and move on with my life. On his side, by meeting me my attacker was obliged to acknowledge what he had done on a personal level, rather than seeing his crime as something abstract.

There is increasing evidence that this 'humanising' of crime can have a strong preventive effect. While it is no substitute for prosecution in more serious cases, restorative justice is increasingly being used for young people who commit relatively minor crimes. This has the dual advantage of reducing future offending and preventing those young people being burdened with a criminal record.

My friends said I was courageous to take part in the scheme, but actually I think it was courageous on the part of my attacker too. He says he's serious about turning his life around and I hope that's true. I think it's essential that young people like him are given support and guidance, and I feel that restorative justice can be a useful element of that.





## 2 LISTENING

a **5.6** Listen to the conversation. Underline the correct words to complete the sentences.

- Speaker 1, Pippa, is *a soldier / a police officer / a lawyer*.
- Speaker 2, Angus, is *a diver / an economist / an engineer*.
- Speaker 3, Martina, is *a farmer / a shop worker / a fruit picker*.

b **5.6** Listen again. Tick (✓) the correct box. Some questions have more than one answer.

|  | Pippa | Angus | Martina |
|--|-------|-------|---------|
| 1 Whose job is dangerous?                        | ✓     | ✓     |         |
| 2 Who says they enjoy the variety of their work? |       |       |         |
| 3 Who has to fill in a lot of forms?             |       |       |         |
| 4 Who mentions earning a lot of money?           |       |       |         |
| 5 Whose job is badly paid?                       |       |       |         |
| 6 Who works away from their family home?         |       |       |         |
| 7 Who says their job is very physically tiring?  |       |       |         |
| 8 Who dislikes their employer?                   |       |       |         |

c **5.6** Listen again. Underline the correct words to complete the sentences.

- You need / *don't need* to be brave to be a police officer.
- Some* / *None* of Pippa's colleagues have been attacked.
- It is *easy* / *not easy* for Pippa to combine her work and her home life.
- Angus has worked on the oil rig for *more* / *less* than ten years.
- He *still has to* / *doesn't have to* work when the weather is very bad.
- He *misses* / *doesn't miss* his family when he is on the rig.
- Oil *is* / *isn't* very important to his country's economic success.
- Martina *works* / *doesn't work* on the fruit farm all year.
- Martina *thinks* / *doesn't think* that her wages are fair.
- Martina *works* / *doesn't work* very long hours.

d Write a conversation between two people discussing the advantages and disadvantages of different jobs. Think about these questions or use ideas of your own:

- What would be your ideal job and why?
- What job would you least like to do and why?
- Which jobs have the highest and lowest salaries?
- Which jobs give the most satisfaction?

# Review and extension

## 1 GRAMMAR and VOCABULARY

Correct the errors in the underlined words.

- Would it be possible to view your collection, the contents which will be helpful for my dissertation?  
*Would it be possible to view your collection, the contents of which will be helpful for my dissertation?*
- Could you confirm the date in which you returned to work?
- I refer to your email on which you asked for some guidance.
- We would like you to speak at our sales conference this year, which details haven't been announced yet.
- I'm sure that who finds my money will keep it.
- They stop the buses where ever they like because there are no designated bus stops.
- Today, the population is estimated at 6,000,000,000 people, who need food, drink and shelter.
- The government is investing a lot of money in the constructing of new motorways.
- More females than males are employed in the public industry.
- After the offender is released, that person can convict a crime again.
- One sector which is very customer-oriented is retailing.
- We are a small manufacturing company based in Scotland.

## 2 WORDPOWER Idioms: Crime

Rewrite the sentences. Replace the underlined words with the words in the box. Make any changes needed.

get away with murder   look over one's shoulder  
~~catch red-handed~~   up to no good   lay down the law

- When I was about five my brother found me stealing his chocolate. He was so mad!  
*When I was about five my brother caught me red-handed stealing his chocolate. He was so mad!*
- I always know when my nephew is doing something he shouldn't be, because he suddenly goes quiet.
- My neighbour never punishes her children. They just do whatever they like and there are no consequences.
- With children, you've got to make sure they know the consequences of breaking the rules right from the start.
- Ever since she was mugged, my auntie's been very nervous when she's out. She's worried it will happen again.



## REVIEW YOUR PROGRESS

Look again at Review your progress on p.66 of the Student's Book. How well can you do these things now?

3 = very well   2 = well   1 = not so well

### I CAN ...

|  |                          |
|--|--------------------------|
| talk about crime and punishment          | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| talk about job requirements and fair pay | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| recall and speculate                     | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| write an opinion essay.                  | <input type="checkbox"/> |

# 6A We all seem to be using digital cameras

## 1 GRAMMAR

### Simple and continuous verbs

a Underline the most appropriate words to complete the conversation.

- A What's your current address?  
 B Eleven, Park Street. <sup>1</sup>*I stay / I'm staying* with friends until I can get my own place.  
 A Since when?  
 B <sup>2</sup>*I've lived / I've been living* there since June.  
 A Have you got a degree?  
 B Not yet. <sup>3</sup>*I study / I'm studying* business and finance with the Open University.  
 A How long have you <sup>4</sup>*done / been doing* that?  
 B For two years. <sup>5</sup>*Are you thinking / Do you think* that will make it difficult for me?  
 A Not at all. Some employers <sup>6</sup>*insist / are insisting* on a degree, but not all.  
 B That's good, because I'll <sup>7</sup>*study / be studying* for two more years.  
 A <sup>8</sup>*Are you / Are you being* flexible?  
 B Yes, of course. Frankly, <sup>9</sup>*I need / I'm needing* the money so <sup>10</sup>*I'm looking / I look* for anything which is full-time.  
 A OK. This firm <sup>11</sup>*recruits / is recruiting* for its Help Desk. Let's give them a call.

b Match sentences 1–8 with a–h.

- 1 ☒ My son is just two.  
 2 ☐ Your hair is soaking.  
 3 ☐ What do you think about the new manager?  
 4 ☐ Real Madrid were leading 2–0 at half time.  
 5 ☐ The house has got too large for my parents.  
 6 ☐ My uncle comes from Australia.  
 7 ☐ What are you thinking about?  
 8 ☐ How long have you been with the company?  
 a Nothing really. Just daydreaming.  
 b Yes, but the game ended in a draw.  
 c She seems very bright and capable.  
 d In May I'll have been working here for 20 years.  
 e It's been raining and I forgot my umbrella.  
 f So they won't be living there much longer?  
 g He's being quite difficult at the moment.  
 h And he's coming all that way for your wedding?

## 2 VOCABULARY Adjectives: Describing images

a Complete the words.

- It is a very weil-c om posed photo, with the subject just the right size for the background.
- The photo of the orphan getting new shoes from the Red Cross is a very p \_ \_ \_ f \_ l image.
- She has clearly spent a lot of time watching people. Her photos are very o \_ \_ \_ \_ a \_ t.
- The photo of the couple kissing in the streets of Paris is i \_ \_ \_ \_ c, a symbol of France.
- He doesn't take himself too seriously – his photos are always h \_ \_ \_ r \_ us.
- The photos taken in the Depression are b \_ \_ \_ k, perfectly expressing the mood of the time.
- It's obviously posed and there is too much going on. It's too e \_ \_ b \_ r \_ t for me.
- You cannot criticise a single part of the photo. It is absolutely f \_ \_ w \_ \_ s.



b Underline the correct words to complete the conversation.

- A What did you think of the exhibition?  
 B She's a brilliant photographer. The pictures are so <sup>1</sup>*evocative / elaborate* of the 1950s.  
 A That's right. Her subjects come over as very natural, there is nothing <sup>2</sup>*casual / elaborate* about the shots.  
 B I agree, and there is such variety. Some, such as the shots of the homeless people, are quite <sup>3</sup>*humorous / gritty* but then you get others which are really quite <sup>4</sup>*meaningful / playful* and make you smile.  
 A That's true. She definitely can't be accused of being <sup>5</sup>*repetitive / sensational*.  
 B It's amazing to think these photos were nearly lost forever. Some of her photos, like the ones of the Statue of Liberty, are very <sup>6</sup>*flawless / powerful*, particularly as that is itself an <sup>7</sup>*iconic / exotic* image. But the way it is composed with the people in the foreground makes it very <sup>8</sup>*meaningful / spacious*.



## 3 PRONUNCIATION Sentence stress

a 6.1 Listen to the sentences and underline the stressed syllables.

- Since June I've been working in Oxford and living in London.
- I'll normally start work at nine and have finished by six.
- I don't enjoy it but will do it for the next few months.
- By the end of September I'm hoping to be moving.
- In November I'll take some time off to visit my brother in Italy.



# 6B Waiting for the drama to begin

## 1 GRAMMAR Participle clauses

a Match 1–8 with a–h to make sentences.

- 1 ☒ Noticing him across the room,
- 2 ☐ Around midnight, I heard the car
- 3 ☐ That guy speaking
- 4 ☐ Not having been there myself,
- 5 ☐ Having gorged myself on chocolate,
- 6 ☐ Any buildings damaged by the storm
- 7 ☐ All the restaurants were packed with
- 8 ☐ *Vertigo* was the film

- a I couldn't possibly comment.
- b I felt sick to my stomach.
- c will be assessed for insurance purposes.
- d tourists eating the local speciality.
- e selected by most critics as the best ever.
- f is my dad.
- g I went over to introduce myself.
- h coming slowly down the lane.

b Complete the extract from a crime novel with the words in the box.

brushing frightened crackling having completed  
sensing waiting ~~having taken~~ pausing looking  
having considered

<sup>1</sup> Having taken off his overcoat, the detective strolled into the drawing-room <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ calm and confident. The guests were sitting quietly, <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ for his explanation of the terrible incidents. <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ for a second, he looked around the room. All was quiet except for the sound of the fire <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ in the fireplace. <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ some invisible dust off his sleeve, he began to talk. 'One person in this room saw the murder, but <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ by what they saw, refuses to speak.' <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ he had the attention of the room, he continued. 'Everyone in this room had a motive to kill Sir Ralph but, <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ all the evidence, I now know for sure who did it.' <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ his opening speech, he turned to Melissa ...

## 2 VOCABULARY Emotions

a Match 1–8 with a–h.

- 1 ☒ I thought I should try bungee jumping.
- 2 ☐ She decided to leave home at sixteen.
- 3 ☐ It was such an amazing surprise.
- 4 ☐ He never appears calm or relaxed.
- 5 ☐ Nothing I tried seemed to work last year.
- 6 ☐ The job wasn't at all like she had been expecting.
- 7 ☐ Most of my colleagues had far more experience than me.
- 8 ☐ He's good-looking, popular and successful.

- a I got very frustrated.
- b Most of us are extremely jealous.
- c As I waited, I was absolutely petrified.
- d I was a bit insecure.
- e Her family were absolutely devastated.
- f I was totally speechless.
- g She felt completely disillusioned.
- h He's always terribly restless.

b Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

petrified frustrated satisfied over-excited  
ashamed protective insecure jealous

- 1 He was petrified at the thought of having to make a speech in front of so many people.
- 2 I feel so \_\_\_\_\_ of myself for reacting so rudely.
- 3 It's normal to feel anxious and \_\_\_\_\_ when meeting people for the first time.
- 4 He was extremely \_\_\_\_\_ of his colleague, who was promoted ahead of him.
- 5 Some parents are too \_\_\_\_\_ of their children and never let them try anything.
- 6 My classmate had a very \_\_\_\_\_ smile on his face when he came top in the exams.
- 7 Too many sugary drinks can get children \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 She got very \_\_\_\_\_ by the number of rejection letters she received.

## 3 PRONUNCIATION Emphatic stress

a 6.2 Listen and underline the stressed word in each sentence.

- 1 She was so disillusioned.
- 2 She was so disillusioned.
- 3 I was absolutely petrified.
- 4 I was absolutely petrified.
- 5 I felt extremely frustrated.
- 6 I felt extremely frustrated.
- 7 They were very protective.
- 8 They were very protective.
- 9 I'm really sorry.
- 10 I'm really sorry.

# 6C Everyday English

## First and foremost

### 1 USEFUL LANGUAGE

#### Organising a presentation

a Match the expressions 1–12 with their functions a–e.

- 1 First and foremost, we need to look at the sales.
- 2 I am here today to talk about development.
- 3 If that is all clear, let's move on to finance.
- 4 If you'd like me to elaborate on that, I can.
- 5 Let me take you through that in more detail.
- 6 Let me talk you through that with an example.
- 7 So to recap on what I have been saying ...
- 8 Turning now to our future plans ...
- 9 My focus today is on Brazil.
- 10 Now, does anyone have any questions?
- 11 One thing is clear, it is a very large market.
- 12 More specifically, we need to look at this area here.

- a ☐ ☐ Introducing the presentation topic  
 b ☐ ☐ Changing focus  
 c ☐ ☐ ☐ Going into detail  
 d ☐ ☐ Summarising and inviting questions  
 e ☒ ☐ ☐ Highlighting a main point

b Complete the sentences from a presentation with the words in the box.

focus in conclusion emphasis first and foremost  
 absolutely obvious talk perspective moving on  
 recap table specifically is clear take turn

- 1 Thanks very much for your warm welcome. My focus topic today is regional development for the group with a particular \_\_\_\_\_ on Latin America.
- 2 One thing \_\_\_\_\_, we really need to have a larger presence in this region if we wish to increase our market share.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_, I would like to give you some statistics about the country which will put things into \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 It's \_\_\_\_\_ that with a market this size we need good distribution and that is one of the areas I would like to \_\_\_\_\_ you through.
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ from distribution, let's now \_\_\_\_\_ to finance and look at the numbers.
- 6 This \_\_\_\_\_ shows the population by age and area and I would like to \_\_\_\_\_ you through it in some detail.
- 7 So \_\_\_\_\_, this is the region I feel we should concentrate on; more \_\_\_\_\_, these two cities.
- 8 So to \_\_\_\_\_ on what I've been saying. This is a great opportunity and I would like to offer my full support to this initiative.

c 6.3 Listen and check.



### 2 PRONUNCIATION

#### Tone in comment phrases

a 6.4 Listen to the sentences. Does the tone of the comment phrase rise (↗) or fall then rise (↘)?

- 1 Generally speaking, the average working week is 42 hours. ↗ ↘
- 2 You get four weeks' paid holiday a year as a rule. ☒ ☐
- 3 As a rule, I'm the last to leave the office. ☐ ☐
- 4 In fact, in some countries you get no holiday during your first year. ☐ ☐
- 5 I think I prefer the Swiss system on the whole. ☐ ☐
- 6 I didn't really enjoy working in Germany, truth to tell. ☐ ☐
- 7 Normally, I have two large meals a day. ☐ ☐
- 8 It's a public holiday here tomorrow, actually. ☐ ☐



# 6D Skills for Writing

## I played an active role

### 1 READING

a Read the letter of application. Are the sentences true or false?

- 1 This is an unsolicited job application.
- 2 He is applying for a position contributing articles.
- 3 Thanks to his research, he has a wide range of contacts in the area.
- 4 His dissertation was on the treatment of injuries.
- 5 The event he helped organise last summer benefited local clubs.
- 6 He is already working with one up-and-coming sports player.
- 7 If he can, he prefers working independently.
- 8 He writes articles already for his own interests.

b Read the letter again. Match the summaries a–g to the paragraphs 1–7.

- a ☐ Closing lines
- b ☐ A specific offer of services
- c ☐ A summary of why he is a good candidate
- d ☐ A description of a recent project he was involved in
- e ☐ Another example of his local sporting activity
- f ☐ A factual summary of his current activity
- g ☒ A statement of why he is writing

### 2 WRITING SKILLS Formal letters; Giving a positive impression

a Underline the correct words for a formal letter.

Dear Sir/Madam

- 1 I am writing in response to your advertisement in the February issue of *The Bridge*. I would like to express my interest in becoming a contributor to the magazine.
- 2 As a regular reader, I must say I like your approach and the way you encourage contributions from young writers. I would be keen to contribute articles about sport and other leisure activities in the area.
- 3 I am currently in my third year at university, studying sports sciences. My dissertation is on the topic of Injury Prevention for Young Athletes and I received help with my research from a large number of local clubs, which was a good exercise in networking. There is a wide range of sporting activities available in the area, all organised by passionate people, keen to get wider recognition for their clubs.
- 4 I am very much in touch with young athletes in the area and I played an active role organising the Junior Olympics here last summer, which over 200 children competed in. We got a lot of local press coverage and even had a short piece on the local TV news programme. What was rewarding about the event was that some of the lesser-known sports had an opportunity to raise their profile and they all subsequently got new members.
- 5 I have also taken a keen interest in the local rowing club, helping Toby Rudd, a rower with huge potential, with his fitness programme in preparation for the national championships. I am certain that your readers would be interested to read about more of our local sporting heroes.
- 6 My combination of academic studies and practical interest in sport makes me an ideal candidate to help out on your magazine. I am well organised and work well either alone or in groups. Please find attached an article from my blog as an example of my writing style and a link to my online CV.
- 7 I look forward to hearing from you in due course.

Yours faithfully

Alex Munroe

<sup>1</sup>Dear Sir / Hi

<sup>2</sup>Just a quick word / I am writing to express an interest in the advertisement which <sup>3</sup>was / appeared in your February issue. I <sup>4</sup>consider / reckon myself to be an ideal candidate for the <sup>5</sup>job / position. A <sup>6</sup>neat / good example of my charity work was my recent <sup>7</sup>running / completion of a half-marathon, which <sup>8</sup>raised / made £300 for Oxfam.

I <sup>9</sup>trust / feel you will give my application <sup>10</sup>your full attention / a good read. <sup>11</sup>Please find / I've attached my covering letter and latest CV.

<sup>12</sup>Yours faithfully / Best wishes

Ludmila Azarov

### 3 WRITING

a Write a formal letter (250 words) applying for the position in the advertisement.

#### FILM REVIEWERS NEEDED FOR UNIVERSITY MAGAZINE

We are currently looking for contributors to write film reviews on a weekly basis.

Reviews need to be 250 words in length. Candidates should be interested in film and be capable of writing critically and engagingly. The work is unpaid but cinema entry is free.

Remember to mention:

- your interest in the role
- your current activity
- personal strengths which would be useful
- some examples of related activities.



# UNIT 6

## Reading and listening extension

### 1 READING

**a** Read the article about Cindy Sherman. Tick (✓) the best summary of the article 1–3.

- 1 ☐ Cindy Sherman makes extremely detailed portraits of different women in order to make us feel that society treats some of them in a way that is unfair.
- 2 ☐ Cindy Sherman photographs herself in a way that represents stereotypes of women in order to make viewers question their ideas about gender and status.
- 3 ☐ Cindy Sherman uses costumes and make-up in order to pretend to be other women, so that she can photograph herself and not need to use models.

**b** Read the article again. Match the summaries a–g to the paragraphs 1–7.

- a ☐ Describes how Sherman notices small details
- b ☐ Describes the variety of her subjects
- c ☐ Explains that she only photographs herself
- d ☒ Gives some biographical details
- e ☐ Talks about the people who look at her photographs
- f ☐ Mentions her childhood
- g ☐ Describes the author's reaction to seeing Sherman's photographs for the first time

**c** According to the article, are the sentences true or false, or is there not enough information to be sure?

- 1 Sherman found photography more suited to her ideas than painting.
- 2 She likes to choose many different women to photograph.
- 3 Some of her photographs look very much like paintings.
- 4 She works with a team of people to create her photographs.
- 5 She feels sympathy for the characters in her photographs.
- 6 The photographs cause a wide range of emotions in viewers.
- 7 The women portrayed in the photos often seem familiar to us.
- 8 The author enjoyed Sherman's New York exhibition very much.

**d** Imagine you have been to a photography exhibition. Write a blog post about it. Think about these questions:

- What sort of photos were they? (Nature, action, fashion, abstract, social records?)
- What did you like about them?
- What did you dislike about them?
- Would you recommend the exhibition to other people?

## The woman of many faces

- 1** Cindy Sherman is by no means your average photographer, but she is undoubtedly one of the most important and influential artists working today. Sherman was born in New Jersey and studied visual arts at Buffalo State College. Having started out as a painter, she quickly became frustrated with what she considered to be the limitations of the form and turned to photography instead.
- 2** She has now been making her strange, powerful and thought-provoking images for over thirty years, but unlike most other photographers, she has only one subject: herself. Or to be more accurate, her own body dressed up in a range of elaborate costumes designed to draw the viewer's attention to some of the most important issues of gender, status and identity which affect us today.
- 3** I will never forget the first time I saw a Sherman exhibition. Not knowing anything about her work, it took some time before the truth gradually dawned on me. I was amazed to realise that what looked like traditional society portraits in their grand frames were in fact photographs. Even more astonishingly, all those varied, fascinating, horrifying and moving faces belonged to the same person: the artist herself.
- 4** Sherman's great gift is that she is hugely observant. The detail in some of her work is astounding, and she has said that even when she sees someone walking down the street towards her, she will notice subtle things about them that most of us would miss. She then goes to enormous lengths to recreate those details,

working in multiple roles as model, director, make-up artist and set designer, as well as photographer. Many of her photographs are shot with the aid of mirrors, just like the selfies of today!

- 5** Speaking in an interview in 2011, Sherman described how she has been dressing up all her life, ever since she was a young girl fascinated by the glamorous actresses she saw on screen. What she does now goes way beyond dressing up, though, and she is adamant that the pictures are not self-portraits. She describes herself as 'disappearing' into the characters, and it is true that she almost *becomes* the people in her photographs.
- 6** And what a range of characters they are! From movie stars, to clowns, to ageing society ladies – their personalities, their faults and their insecurities are exposed to the world, and the experience of looking at them is at the same time uncomfortable, compelling, amusing and moving. To look at her work is to come face-to-face with society's stereotypes. These are not specific women, and the photographs are deliberately untitled, but nevertheless, when we look at them, we feel we know people like this.
- 7** Visiting a major exhibition of her work in New York's Museum of Modern Art, I couldn't help making comparisons between the images and some of the wealthy women walking around the gallery. Did they recognise themselves, I wondered? In many ways, I hoped not. Who wouldn't be devastated to see their own life held up for detailed examination in this way?





# Review and extension

## 1 GRAMMAR and VOCABULARY

Correct the errors in the underlined words.

- Each time you are doing this, your English definitely gets better.  
*Each time you do this, your English definitely gets better.*
- The popularity of photo sharing sites fluctuated over the period, but generally were increasing.
- Not being very happy in my childhood, I tried to bring my children up in the opposite way.
- Experiencing it, I must say that the way the event was reported gave the wrong impression.
- She walked the whole night, knowing not where to go, what direction to take.
- If parents do not have time to spend with their children, they will get frustrate.
- People sacrifice their savings to get something that will make their neighbour jealous.
- I would be devastated if I ever lost my phone!
- Lack of positive feedback can make you feel unsecure and lose self-confidence.
- Although the authors describe serious problems, it's done in a humouristic way.

## 2 LISTENING

a 6.5 Listen to the conversation between two photographers, Lewis and Martha. Complete the sentences.

- \_\_\_\_\_ works as a news photographer.
- \_\_\_\_\_ works as a celebrity photographer.
- Lewis was in an \_\_\_\_\_ in Pakistan.
- Martha wants to go to \_\_\_\_\_ school.
- Martha is \_\_\_\_\_ years old.

b 6.5 Listen again. Tick (✓) the correct answer.

- Why does Lewis think Martha is doing well?
  - ☐ Because her job takes her to nice places.
  - ☒ Because she's selling lots of photographs.
  - ☐ Because she has a good job.
- Why is Lewis jealous of Martha?
  - ☐ Because he thinks her job is more comfortable than his.
  - ☐ Because she is making a lot of money.
  - ☐ Because she likes her work.
- What does Martha say is better about Lewis's job?
  - ☐ It's more interesting than hers.
  - ☐ It's easier than hers.
  - ☐ It is more worthwhile than hers.
- Why did having a daughter change Martha's perspective on her job?
  - ☐ It made her want to have more time at home.
  - ☐ It made her more aware of issues connected to body image.
  - ☐ It made her think about how to change her life.
- Why has Martha decided to go to drama school?
  - ☐ Because acting is something she really loves.
  - ☐ Because she isn't successful at photography.
  - ☐ Because she doesn't want to be a wedding photographer.
- What effect does their conversation have on Lewis?
  - ☐ It makes him very surprised.
  - ☐ It makes him question whether he should change jobs too.
  - ☐ It makes him want to spend more time watching football.

c Write a conversation between two people discussing a great news photograph. Think about these questions or use ideas of your own:

- Where did they see the photograph?
- What makes it a really good news photo?
- How does it make them feel?

## 2 WORDPOWER Idioms: Feelings

Rewrite the sentences. Replace the underlined words with the words in the box. Make any changes needed.

grin and bear it   over the moon   get on one's nerves  
can't believe one's eyes   at the end of one's tether

- My boss just keeps giving me more and more work. I'm exhausted. I feel like I can't cope any more.  
*My boss just keeps giving me more and more work. I'm exhausted. I'm at the end of my tether.*
- I went to a wedding at the weekend and the bride's dress was bright green – I was amazed!
- When I was a little girl my parents told me we were going on a plane to visit my grandparents. I was so excited!
- One of my colleagues tells jokes all the time, and they're not very funny ones. It really annoys me.
- I've told my friend I'll go to a dance class with her. I don't like dancing, but I'll put up with it if it makes her happy.



## REVIEW YOUR PROGRESS

Look again at Review your progress on p.78 of the Student's Book. How well can you do these things now?

3 = very well   2 = well   1 = not so well

### I CAN ...

|                                |                          |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| describe photos and hobbies    | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| tell a descriptive narrative   | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| organise a presentation        | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| write a letter of application. | <input type="checkbox"/> |

# 7A There's no way robots will ever replace humans

## 1 GRAMMAR

### Speculation and deduction

#### a Match 1–8 with a–h.

- 1 ☒ a Wind power may well become more popular.
- 2 ☐ The train is running about an hour late.
- 3 ☐ Jack's wearing a tie.
- 4 ☐ I missed your phone call.
- 5 ☐ You've got to be the best person for that job.
- 6 ☐ You can tell she studied in the United States.
- 7 ☐ The electric car is bound to get better in time.
- 8 ☐ I bet Mario will be at the conference.

- a Particularly if other energy prices keep rising.
- b I was driving and the signal must have been bad.
- c He hardly ever misses one.
- d I'll be surprised if you don't get it.
- e They just really need to improve the battery.
- f He must be going to an interview.
- g Have you heard her accent?
- h We probably won't get to Berlin before midnight.

#### b Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

looks like ~~should have~~ there's even an outside chance  
could have quite possible couldn't have  
no way we seem to be

- A** Hi, Peter. Good to see you again. What are you doing here?  
I thought you worked in the Birmingham office.
- B** I do, but I'm here for an interview. Account Executive.
- A** Wow. You <sup>1</sup> should have told me. We <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_  
met up last night.
- B** I had dinner with Frank. I <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ prepared for the  
interview without his help.
- A** So what are you going to tell them?
- B** The new system <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a great improvement.  
<sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ having difficulties getting paid so the new  
process should improve things.
- A** So what are your chances?
- B** Pretty good, I think. There's <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ they could  
give it to an external candidate and <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ I am  
the only applicant!
- A** Good luck, anyway. Seems like it's <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ we'll be  
seeing more of each other.

#### c 7A Listen and check.



## 2 VOCABULARY Compound adjectives

#### a Complete the sentences with the most appropriate words in the box.

half-hearted narrow-minded heartbreaking  
~~mind-boggling~~ hard-hearted open-minded  
heartwarming warm-hearted

- 1 The kitchen was amazing, with a mind-boggling range of gadgets and equipment.
- 2 She's so kind, friendly and sympathetic – a really \_\_\_\_\_ person.
- 3 The happy ending after such a hard struggle through poverty and illness was really \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 He showed very little enthusiasm for the job. In fact, it was all rather \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 He has very little time for, or interest in, people's feelings. He is so \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Our new manager is very \_\_\_\_\_, always willing to listen to different ideas.
- 7 The old manager was \_\_\_\_\_ and never really listened to anyone.
- 8 It was \_\_\_\_\_ to see all those poor children suffering so much.

#### b Match the adjectives 1–7 with the definitions a–g.

- 1 ☒ f clear-headed
  - 2 ☐ tongue-tied
  - 3 ☐ hair-raising
  - 4 ☐ backbreaking
  - 5 ☐ mouth-watering
  - 6 ☐ jaw-dropping
  - 7 ☐ absent-minded
- a tending to forget things
  - b stunningly amazing
  - c looking and smelling delicious
  - d so shy and nervous, you cannot speak
  - e physically very demanding
  - f calm and logical
  - g frightening and exciting





# 7B What I enjoy is a heart-to-heart chat

## 1 GRAMMAR Cleft sentences

a Match 1–8 with a–h to make sentences.

- 1 ☒ c The reason we chose Austria was
- 2 ☐ What he suggested
- 3 ☐ All you can do is
- 4 ☐ It was at the meeting
- 5 ☐ What I really need now is
- 6 ☐ What happened to me on holiday is
- 7 ☐ What really annoys me
- 8 ☐ What went wrong was that

- a was never going to work.
- b I forgot to add the flour.
- c because of the skiing.
- d is hearing people complain.
- e try your very best.
- f hard to describe.
- g a nice cup of tea.
- h that everybody got a chance to speak.

b Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1 whole world / is Prague / in the / place / my favourite .  
My favourite place in the whole world is Prague.
- 2 student of mine / who first told me / it was / a former / about it .  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I went there / was 2009 / the very first time .  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 absolutely love / is the / what I / incredible atmosphere / about it .  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 just / what is / amazing is / the locals are / how friendly .  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 and people just / go into a café / start talking to you / what happens / is you .  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 7 that I'm / I'm there / only when / to be / really happy / honest, it's .  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 8 a job there / really hard but / annoys me is / what really / I've tried / I can't get .  
\_\_\_\_\_

## 2 VOCABULARY Nouns with suffixes: Society and relationships

a Underline the correct words to complete the summary of an appraisal.

You have overcome the <sup>1</sup>*problems* / *nervousness* / *self-awareness* you felt in meetings last year and you have demonstrated this in the way you have encouraged <sup>2</sup>*distribution* / *collection* / *collaboration* with our other branches. You felt you were working in <sup>3</sup>*exclusion* / *isolation* / *liberation* last year, so we were pleased with your work on some of the group projects, where you have shown great <sup>4</sup>*inspiration* / *innovation* / *separation*, with new approaches the company really needs. Working with others has also helped you become more <sup>5</sup>*anxious* / *liberal* / *tolerant* and to gain new <sup>6</sup>*sights* / *prospects* / *perspectives*, which is always useful when working with people.

Your requests for training on communication skills show great <sup>7</sup>*self-interest* / *self-awareness* / *self-satisfaction* and I feel certain this will help you on future projects. I think we can look forward to next year with great <sup>8</sup>*optimism* / *pessimism* / *socialism*.

b Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

ostracism   distribution   selfishness  
materialism   capitalism   ~~exclusion~~

- 1 In most countries, serious crime is punished by some form of exclusion.
- 2 Certain political philosophers advocate a fairer \_\_\_\_\_ of wealth.
- 3 As spiritualism declines, \_\_\_\_\_ and an interest in ownership is on the rise.
- 4 I am afraid that \_\_\_\_\_, a complete disregard for others, is quite common these days.
- 5 One of the main effects of \_\_\_\_\_ is the widening of the gap between the rich and the poor.
- 6 Throughout history, minorities have suffered from \_\_\_\_\_ from mainstream society.

## 3 PRONUNCIATION

### Stress in cleft structures

a 7.2 Listen and underline the stressed word(s) in the cleft structure in **bold**.

- 1 **The person** I'd most like to thank is Charles.
- 2 **The reason** I'm here is to help you.
- 3 **The one thing** I cannot do is cook.
- 4 **What went wrong** was I lost my ticket and got fined.
- 5 **The main reason** I cycle to work is to save money.
- 6 **The only thing** I ask is that you try your best.
- 7 **What will happen** is someone will be waiting with your name on a sign.
- 8 **What they proposed** was impossible to deliver.



# 7C Everyday English

## I was out of line

### 1 USEFUL LANGUAGE

#### Apologising and admitting fault

- a Match the underlined phrases (1–5) in the conversation with Mario's precise meaning (a–d).

- MARIO** Hi, Andy. About the other day in the meeting. <sup>1</sup>I don't know what came over me.
- ANDY** Yes, I was quite surprised by your reaction to my proposal.
- MARIO** I've just been so stressed recently. <sup>2</sup>I guess I overreacted.
- ANDY** I think that's putting it mildly – no one's ever spoken to me like that before. It actually really upset me.
- MARIO** <sup>3</sup>I was out of order. I'm just so tired, but <sup>4</sup>I had no right to take it out on you.
- ANDY** No, you didn't, but I understand things are difficult at the moment.
- MARIO** Still, <sup>5</sup>it was inexcusable of me.
- ANDY** Well, thanks for talking to me about it. Let's just forget it, shall we?

- a ☐ Andy was not at fault.
- b ☒ Mario did not expect his own reaction.
- c ☐ Mario thinks his reaction was too strong.
- d ☐ Mario does not think his own reaction was acceptable.

- b Underline the correct words to complete the conversation.

- A** So what do people think of this plan for a weekend ramble?  
Will it increase staff morale?
- B** Who came up with that idea?
- A** I did. Along with some of the other managers.
- B** So you think a 20-kilometre hike will improve the atmosphere?  
What planet are you on? I've had it up to <sup>1</sup>there / here with some of the recent suggestions.
- A** Excuse me? I think you are out of <sup>2</sup>touch / order there.
- B** I do <sup>3</sup>apologise / excuse, but when will you understand that the staff want higher wages? That is all. Any other ideas dreamed up by you and your colleagues are just a waste of time.
- C** Steady on, John.
- B** Sorry, that wasn't very <sup>4</sup>tactful / careful of me. I had no right to <sup>5</sup>make / take it out on you, but the staff are unhappy.
- A** We know they are. But people like you who, if you'll <sup>6</sup>hear / excuse me, have been here rather a long time, need to understand there are more ways to improve things than just paying people more.
- C** I think you are out of <sup>7</sup>time / line there. Just because John and I have been here a long time doesn't mean we don't understand how to manage.
- A** Sorry. I guess I <sup>8</sup>overreacted / overtook. Apologies all round. Now, where were we?

- c **7.3** Listen and check.



### 2 PRONUNCIATION

#### Sound and spelling: ou and ough

- a **7.4** Listen to the words in the box. How are the **bold** letters pronounced in each word? Complete the table with the words.

**route** although brought dough tough bough  
would **four** announce thought through  
conscious south could southern cough

| Sound 1 /ʊ/<br>(e.g. <i>foot</i> ) | Sound 2 /u:/<br>(e.g. <i>suit</i> ) | Sound 3 /aʊ/<br>(e.g. <i>how</i> ) | Sound 4 /əʊ/<br>(e.g. <i>throw</i> ) |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
|                                    | route                               |                                    |                                      |
| Sound 5 /ɔ:/<br>(e.g. <i>saw</i> ) | Sound 6 /ʌ/<br>(e.g. <i>but</i> )   | Sound 7 /ɒ/<br>(e.g. <i>box</i> )  | Sound 8 /ə/<br>(e.g. <i>method</i> ) |
|                                    |                                     |                                    |                                      |

# 7D Skills for Writing

It may result in improved cooperation

## 1 READING

a Read the report. Are the sentences true or false?

- 1 This is an internal report.
- 2 The ideas are based on scientific research.
- 3 Customers have specifically requested additional support.
- 4 The plan is going to be expensive and time-consuming.
- 5 The idea is to attract the public to a new website.
- 6 It will free up more time for developing sales prospects.

b Read the report again. Tick (✓) the correct answers.

- 1 The report outlines a plan to offer better services to ...
  - a ☐ new customers.
  - b ☒ some existing customers.
  - c ☐ all existing customers.
- 2 An example of the additional kind of services clients have requested is ...
  - a ☐ conferences.
  - b ☐ training.
  - c ☐ new products.
- 3 The plan outlined in the proposal is ...
  - a ☐ time-consuming.
  - b ☐ very expensive.
  - c ☐ neither time-consuming nor expensive.
- 4 The purpose of the website will be to provide ...
  - a ☐ promotional material.
  - b ☐ social networking.
  - c ☐ up-to-date information.
- 5 Most of the work on the website will be done by ...
  - a ☐ a supplier.
  - b ☐ the customers.
  - c ☐ R+D.
- 6 By offering this service to customers, the sales teams will need to visit them ...
  - a ☐ less frequently.
  - b ☐ just as frequently.
  - c ☐ more frequently.

## 2 WRITING SKILLS Proposals; Linking: highlighting and giving examples

a Underline the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 The disease is now on the decline in most countries, as *told by / detailed in* this WHO report.
- 2 She has made a lot of changes in her time here, *specifically / generally* the introduction of hot-desking.
- 3 We had great motivational speakers last year, *such as / thus* Ellen MacArthur, the yachtswoman.
- 4 It has been a great success with our customers, *especially / like* the smaller ones.
- 5 The team has had a very successful season, as *reflected / demonstrated* by their victory in the regional tournament.
- 6 The project has highlighted two of your skills, *therefore / namely* leadership and tact.



## LABTEC Report

The aim of this proposal is to outline a plan to offer our key customers a better range of services. Feedback from recent conferences has highlighted the fact that our customers expect more from us than just the products we sell them, as demonstrated by the recent request for scientific training. Specifically, they have suggested that they would benefit from more information about certain areas relating to the industry, and feel that we as the supplier are in a strong position to provide it. I have identified a solution which I believe is ideal in terms of time and expense.

I suggest we develop a Community of Practice website for our key customers. It would have access codes, so only current customers would be able to benefit. The website would act as an information resource, especially on current developments in our field, as well as offering discussion boards on themes such as export regulations, health and safety, and transport. I have found a company who specialise in such websites and, as detailed in the attached quotation, they build it, host it and manage it. Our input would be minimal, namely regular updates on new products, video footage from R+D, and a monthly blog. There will be other time savings. For instance, a number of customer questions would be handled by means of a FAQ section rather than by our sales teams.

Overall, I see the website as having considerable benefits, such as retaining customers and building customer loyalty, especially among the smaller customers. It will also reduce the number of visits our sales team have to make, allowing them time to prospect other potential customers. Furthermore, it will differentiate us from our competitors and it will set a new industry standard in terms of customer support.

I am keen to discuss this proposal in more detail with you and hope you agree that it is an innovative way of trying to defend and grow our sales.

## 3 WRITING

a Write a short proposal (250 words) on the following topic.

### Class survey

You have been studying English for a while now. Talk to other students and your teacher about the course and prepare a short proposal on how you would like to improve things.

Remember to include information about:

- time and frequency of the class
- size and level of the class
- class activities
- self-study.



# UNIT 7

## Reading and listening extension

### 1 READING

**a** Read the article. Choose the correct headings a–d for each part of the article 1–4.

- a ☐ Learning to interact with others
- b ☐ Giving and getting support
- c ☐ Knowing yourself better
- d ☐ Enjoying a long life

**b** Read the article again. Are the sentences true or false?

- 1 The author believes it's possible to extend how long you live.
- 2 Friends can help people control their diet.
- 3 Children become less aggressive when they spend time with others of a similar age.
- 4 Small children are too young to learn how to compromise.
- 5 Doctors have recently discovered that living alone is bad for the health.
- 6 Giving people injections of cortisol will help to reduce their stress levels.
- 7 Early humans tended to live lonely, self-sufficient lives.
- 8 Men look for solutions for problems rather than discussing their concerns.

**c** Read the article again. Tick (✓) the ideas that are mentioned.

- 1 ☒ Friends may warn you about forming relationships with unsuitable people.
- 2 ☐ If your friends behave in damaging ways, they will influence you to do the same.
- 3 ☐ Getting to know other people makes children think they are strange and not normal.
- 4 ☐ Children have to learn appropriate strategies in order to get on with their friends.
- 5 ☐ If you want a long life, it is more important to have friends than to give up smoking.
- 6 ☐ Everyone with breast cancer should join a support group.
- 7 ☐ The kind of support we need from our friends is different from what it was long ago.
- 8 ☐ Women are better than men at supporting their friends.

**d** Write a magazine article about the best way to make friends. Remember to include:

- why it is important to have friends
- the best places to meet new friends (think about different stages in your life)
- how to make people want to be friends with you.

## Friendship and happiness

### – the link is stronger than you think!

If you're striving for a long and happy life, one of the most important things you can do is make friends and put effort into your friendships. Here are four compelling reasons to put friendship at the top of your priority list:

1 \_\_\_\_\_

Self-awareness is a great tool for life, and nobody can help you develop that better than the friends who know you so well. True friends won't be afraid to give you an honest opinion, and a reality check if you need it! They are the ones who will tell you that the person you have fallen hopelessly in love with is actually a bit of an idiot, or who will alert you to damaging behaviour, such as eating too much junk food or being unable to control your temper, and support you in dealing with it.

2 \_\_\_\_\_

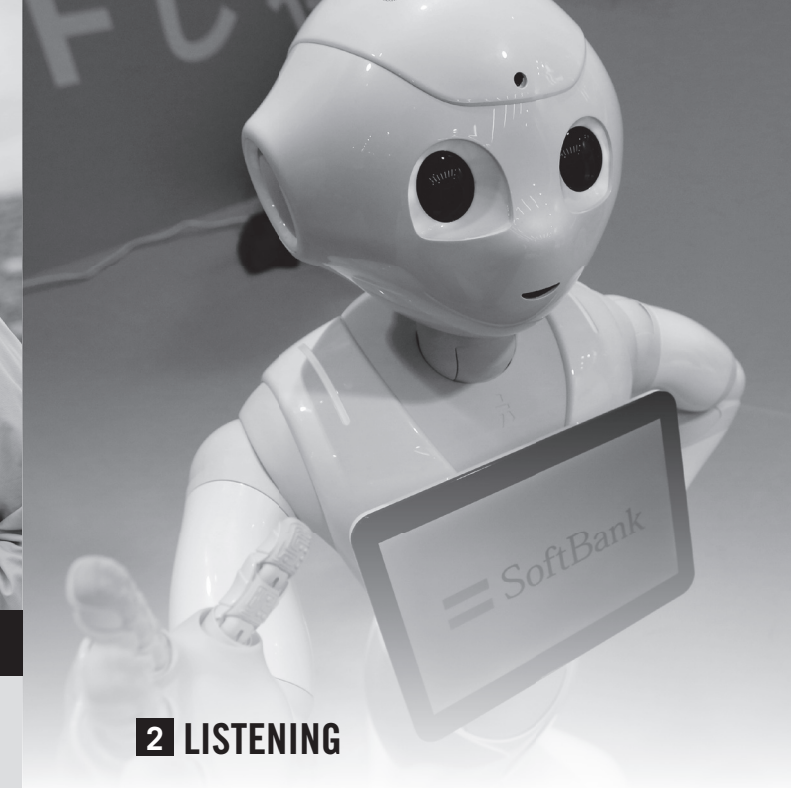
When we are small children, we think that everyone's family is like our own. Making friends helps us to broaden our outlook. As a result we (hopefully!) become more open-minded and develop qualities of respect and tolerance. Another important thing we learn is how to resolve our differences. By playing with friends, young children come to realise that screaming and hitting isn't the best way to get what they want, and learn skills like negotiating and compromising, which are of immense value in later life.

3 \_\_\_\_\_

It has been known for some time that a secure network of friends helps to increase our life expectancy. Everyone knows that isolation can lead to a deterioration in mental health, but what's perhaps even more interesting is its effect on our physical health. Research tells us that as a person's social network gets smaller, their risk of mortality increases and, incredibly, some studies show the correlation to be almost as strong as it is for smoking. Even cancer and heart attack patients do better if they have friends: one study showed that women with breast cancer who attended a support group had significantly better survival rates than those who did not, and had lower levels of cortisol, the stress hormone.

4 \_\_\_\_\_

Our friends can provide valuable support in achieving our life goals. They will encourage us in times of self-doubt and be proud of our successes. There is almost certainly a strong evolutionary reason for this; humans are social animals who have always relied on each other for survival. Although in the past this may well have been because of the need to band together to hunt for meat or gather nuts, we still benefit from the support of our friends. Interestingly, the nature of this support varies markedly between the sexes. Especially when dealing with emotional problems, women, broadly speaking, tend to be more empathetic; that is to say, they are good at showing understanding. Men, on the other hand, tend to be more practical; they will be happy to mend the washing machine, but might struggle if you want to talk about your feelings!



## 2 LISTENING

**a** **7.5** Listen to the conversation. Tick (✓) the advantages of robots which are mentioned.

- 1 ☒ They can help with memory problems.
- 2 ☐ They can remind users when they need food or drink.
- 3 ☐ They can provide a form of friendship.
- 4 ☐ They help to reduce the burden on existing resources.
- 5 ☐ They don't need any maintenance.
- 6 ☐ They can enable users to go outside.
- 7 ☐ They can benefit the person's usual carer.
- 8 ☐ They are easy to use by touching.
- 9 ☐ They can help users maintain their social lives.
- 10 ☐ They can do housework.

**b** **7.5** Listen again. Underline the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 Ingrid doesn't think that robots can *cause* / help people with / *understand* loneliness.
- 2 Carlo thinks that robots are meant to be used *in addition to* / *instead of* / *more often than* human carers.
- 3 Ingrid finds the idea of being spoken to by a machine very *offensive* / *shocking* / *sad*.
- 4 Carlo points out that existing services *can easily manage* / *can barely cope with* / *often exaggerate* the amount of work they have to do.
- 5 Ingrid *doesn't believe* / *thinks* / *hopes* that the government will spend any extra money on older people.
- 6 Ingrid thinks that using a robot might be *fun* / *expensive* / *difficult* for elderly people.
- 7 The robot is trained to understand the way the user *behaves* / *moves* / *speaks*.
- 8 Carlo *thinks* / *doesn't think* / *hopes* that robots will be able to do tasks like ironing in the near future.

**c** Write a conversation between two people discussing ways in which robots may be used in the future. Think about these questions or use ideas of your own:

- What sorts of things could robots do?
- Will they ever be 'intelligent'?
- Could increased use of robots lead to less personal contact between people?
- What would you most like a robot to be able to do for you?

# Review and extension

## 1 GRAMMAR and VOCABULARY

Correct the errors in the underlined words.

- 1 If everyone attends, it more likely an agreement will be reached.  
If *everyone attends*, it is *more likely an agreement* will be reached.
- 2 Given previous summers, a heatwave is quiet possible.
- 3 Skis are not bound to be of much use in the summer.
- 4 What shouldn't be forgotten the fact that he was born here.
- 5 What was amazing that she won the competition twice.
- 6 After two hours of excellent music, including heart breaking ballads, they left the stage.
- 7 The risk of an accident increases when you are excited, irritated, sleepy or abscent minded.
- 8 It is essential for hotels to serve mouthwatering food these days.
- 9 In my view, animals feel lonelyness in the same way a human can feel it.
- 10 Please make sure you read the report which describes our innovation in data security.
- 11 Until his late fifties, he led his life with a fear of intimity and the outside world.
- 12 We all need warm winter clothes to protect us from the coldness.

## 2 WORDPOWER *self-*

Underline the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 I love singing but I could never sing on stage – I'm not *self-centred* / self-confident enough.
- 2 She doesn't seem to realise that she's grumpy when she's hungry. She is not very *self-aware* / *self-satisfied*.
- 3 My father worked overtime to get the money to buy my first bike. He was so *self-sacrificing* / *self-sufficient*.
- 4 When I'm older I don't want to have to rely on anyone else. I want to be completely *self-confident* / *self-sufficient*.
- 5 My brother missed our mum's birthday party because he went out with his friends. He's so *self-centred* / *self-aware*!



## REVIEW YOUR PROGRESS

Look again at Review your progress on p.90 of the Student's Book. How well can you do these things now?

3 = very well    2 = well    1 = not so well

### I CAN ...

- |  |                          |
|--|--------------------------|
| speculate about inventions and technology          | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| emphasise opinions about society and relationships | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| apologise and admit fault                          | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| write a proposal.                                  | <input type="checkbox"/> |

# 8A It's no use trying to go to sleep

## 1 GRAMMAR Gerunds and infinitives

- a Complete the text with the gerund or infinitive form of the words in the box.

act sleepwalk create move do need  
be ~~come~~ wake up talk walk



Ever since I saw my two-year-old son <sup>1</sup> coming downstairs at midnight, I have been interested in <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. It was the middle of the night, yet he appeared <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ awake. In fact, he was fast asleep. Like most kids, the following morning he couldn't remember <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ it. He carried on <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ in his sleep until he was about ten and then he suddenly stopped. All this goes to show that you shouldn't be worried if your child starts <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ like this, but remember <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a safe sleeping environment for them. It can also be dangerous <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a sleepwalking child suddenly. With our son, we found it was best <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to him and cuddle him until he woke up. Sleepwalkers tend <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ more sleep than other children, so <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the bedtime a little earlier might also be helpful.

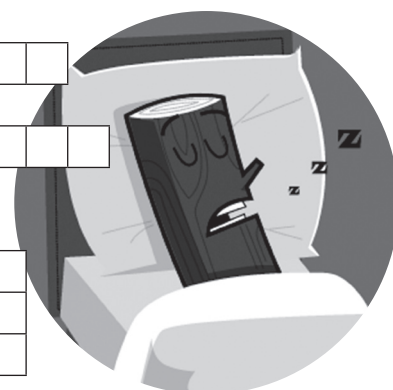
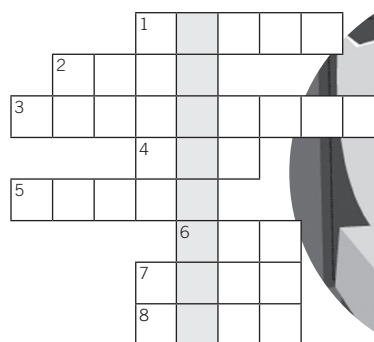
- b Underline the correct words to complete the sentences.

- Working / Having worked six days a week is killing me.
- I wonder if it is really worth to put / putting all that effort in.
- I'd rather to do / do something else next weekend.
- Let me decide / to decide where we have dinner this evening.
- What I am angry about is not giving / not having been given the chance to refuse.
- There is still time to alter / for altering the schedule if we decide to.
- I get so tired of hearing / having heard the same old comments.
- I was late home again last night, having waited / waiting for my luggage at the airport.
- We are sure meeting / to meet our competitors at the fair, since they always attend.
- There is no point in complain / complaining about it if they can't change it.

## 2 VOCABULARY Sleep

- a Complete the puzzle. What is the shaded word?

- Someone who wakes up easily is a \_\_\_\_\_ sleeper.
- You toss and \_\_\_\_\_ when you cannot sleep.
- When you wake up too late, you \_\_\_\_\_.
- A deep sleeper sleeps like a \_\_\_\_\_.
- When you see images and imagine things happening while you are asleep.
- A short sleep during the day.
- When you are \_\_\_\_\_ awake, you cannot sleep.
- When you are in a deep sleep, you are \_\_\_\_\_ asleep.



- b Underline the correct words to complete the conversation.

- A Oh, I'm so tired. I didn't sleep a <sup>1</sup> wink / blink last night!  
B Really? You usually sleep like a <sup>2</sup> dog / log, don't you?  
A Yes, I'm often <sup>3</sup> fast / deep asleep by 11.00 pm.  
B That's if you haven't already drifted <sup>4</sup> off / on while reading in bed!  
A True. I think I'm going to have a <sup>5</sup> nap / tap later.  
B I can't sleep during the day. Even at night, I'm a very <sup>6</sup> slight / light sleeper.  
A So you find it really difficult to drop <sup>7</sup> off / in to sleep?  
B Oh yes. I often just lie there <sup>8</sup> wide / high awake for hours.  
A Well, make sure you don't <sup>9</sup> undersleep / oversleep. You've got to be up early tomorrow.

## 3 PRONUNCIATION Sentence stress

- a 8.1 Listen to the fixed expressions in **bold** and underline the stressed syllables.

- I didn't **sleep a wink** last night!
- I usually **sleep like a log**.
- I'm often **fast asleep** by 11.
- I'm going to **have a nap** later.
- I just lie there, **wide awake**.
- Make sure you **don't oversleep**.



# 8B Suppose you could live forever

## 1 GRAMMAR Conditionals

a Match 1–6 with a–f to make sentences.

- 1 ☒ If people could see the amount of sugar in certain soft drinks,
  - 2 ☐ Had I known more about nutrition as a kid,
  - 3 ☐ I don't eat carbohydrates
  - 4 ☐ You can eat pretty much what you like provided
  - 5 ☐ I would have lost even more weight
  - 6 ☐ Supposing I followed this diet,
- a your diet is balanced.  
b if I had taken up cycling earlier.  
c unless I have been for a run first.  
d they wouldn't buy them.  
e I would be in much better condition now.  
f how much weight could I expect to lose?



b Underline the correct words to complete the text.



Charles Eugster is a former dentist who does not <sup>1</sup>show / tell his age in the slightest. At ninety-five, he has just broken the world record for running the 200 metres in the over-90 age bracket. Eight years ago, in an attempt to improve his appearance, he didn't take the option of <sup>2</sup>plastic / beauty surgery but instead, he started training as a bodybuilder, doing regular <sup>3</sup>fattening / strengthening and <sup>4</sup>tanning / toning exercises. His skin slowly <sup>5</sup>tightened / thinned and got <sup>6</sup>firmer / fitter and his complexion started to <sup>7</sup>grow / glow. Three years ago, he took up running, which gives him <sup>8</sup>regular / usual cardiovascular exercise and, importantly, a chance to compete. For Charles, there are three secrets to a healthy life: hard work, a varied and <sup>9</sup>light / balanced diet and exercise. Unlike many people, he positively enjoys ageing.

## 2 VOCABULARY Ageing and health

a 8.2 Listen to the advertisement and complete the information.

### THREE-STEP PLAN *to a better life*

Are you <sup>1</sup> showing your age? Do you have <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ skin, fine lines and <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_?

Are you prone to <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ skin? Is your hair <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and greying?

Adopt our plan to prevent those visible signs of <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

**Step 1** <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and have weekly facials to <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and pump the skin. ✓

**Step 2** Eat a varied and <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ diet to lose <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and get yourself a <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ complexion. ✓

**Step 3** Help poor <sup>12</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and prevent <sup>13</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ trouble by doing regular <sup>14</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ exercise. ✓

## 3 PRONUNCIATION

Pitch: extra information

a 8.3 Listen to a person giving instructions. Write the extra information she gives and notice the lower pitch.

- 1 Take your eggs, \_\_\_\_\_, and break them in a bowl.
- 2 Take a whisk, \_\_\_\_\_, and beat them.
- 3 Add some salt and pepper, \_\_\_\_\_, and stir.
- 4 Take some hard cheese, \_\_\_\_\_, and grate it.
- 5 Melt some butter, \_\_\_\_\_, in a frying pan.
- 6 Pour the mix – \_\_\_\_\_ – into the pan and cook for a minute or two.
- 7 Add the cheese and wait, \_\_\_\_\_, until it melts. Serve immediately.

# 8C Everyday English

## Is that your best offer?



### 1 USEFUL LANGUAGE Negotiating

a Underline the correct words to complete the conversation.

- A How much would you be <sup>1</sup>willing / keen to pay?  
 B We'd be <sup>2</sup>prepared / preparing to offer somewhere around a hundred and eighty.  
 A We were kind of <sup>3</sup>expecting / hoping for more in the region of three hundred.  
 B I'm afraid that's out of <sup>4</sup>touch / the question. What would you <sup>5</sup>say / react to two forty?  
 A Two forty? Is that your best <sup>6</sup>go / offer?  
 B It will have to be. I'm not authorised to go any <sup>7</sup>larger / higher.  
 A Could you see your <sup>8</sup>time / way to increasing that to two hundred and fifty?  
 B Possibly. There's just the <sup>9</sup>detail / issue of availability. I'd really need it soon.  
 A How <sup>10</sup>flexible / long can you be on that? I could possibly do Saturday.  
 B OK. That's a deal. Two hundred and fifty with delivery on Saturday.

b Put the words in the correct order to make sentences and questions.

- 1 to pay / for it / how much / the question / there's just / of / you'd like .  
There's just the question of how much you'd like to pay for it.  
 2 a position / to accept / I'm not / in / anything less .  
 3 much more / that / than / the carpet / is worth .  
 4 final / is / that / offer / your ?  
 5 to increasing / see your way / a little / could you / that offer ?  
 6 in the region / of \$100 / hoping for / a hotel room / a night / I was .

c Are 1–9 said by someone buying or selling? Tick (✓) the correct box.

|   | Buying | Selling |
|---|--------|---------|
| 1 I'd be prepared to accept ...                       |        | ✓       |
| 2 I'm afraid I can't go higher than ...               |        |         |
| 3 It's worth much more than that.                     |        |         |
| 4 You won't find a car like it cheaper anywhere else. |        |         |
| 5 That's as high as I can go.                         |        |         |
| 6 Could you see your way to increasing that a little? |        |         |
| 7 That's my final offer.                              |        |         |
| 8 I was kind of hoping for ...                        |        |         |
| 9 I'm not authorised to go any higher.                |        |         |

d 8.4 Listen and check.

### 2 PRONUNCIATION

#### Intonation in implied questions

a 8.5 Listen. Are 1–12 statements or implied questions? Tick (✓) the correct box.

|  | Statement | Question |
|--|-----------|----------|
| 1 I was thinking about a dessert.            | ✓         |          |
| 2 I was thinking about a dessert.            |           |          |
| 3 You sound French to me.                    |           |          |
| 4 You sound French to me.                    |           |          |
| 5 I'm not sure if you were there last week.  |           |          |
| 6 I'm not sure if you were there last week.  |           |          |
| 7 I was considering a takeaway tonight.      |           |          |
| 8 I was considering a takeaway tonight.      |           |          |
| 9 I'm doing some work for, you know, Oxfam.  |           |          |
| 10 I'm doing some work for, you know, Oxfam. |           |          |
| 11 We could go out at, say, ten.             |           |          |
| 12 We could go out at, say, ten.             |           |          |

# 8D Skills for Writing

It's a unique dining experience

## 1 READING

a Read the home page of a hotel.

Tick (✓) the correct answers.

- 1 The opening paragraph ...
  - a ☐ describes the hotel.
  - b ☒ gets the reader's attention.
  - c ☐ does neither of these.
- 2 The second paragraph ...
  - a ☐ describes some of the amenities.
  - b ☐ asks questions.
  - c ☐ lists activities.
- 3 The hotel would be a good choice for ...
  - a ☐ a large family celebration.
  - b ☐ a company awayday.
  - c ☐ a romantic break.
- 4 The third paragraph focuses on ...
  - a ☐ the chef.
  - b ☐ the restaurant.
  - c ☐ the food.
- 5 The food is described as delicious and ...
  - a ☐ Swedish.
  - b ☐ seasonal.
  - c ☐ organic.
- 6 The last paragraph offers ...
  - a ☐ a description of other amenities.
  - b ☐ an invitation.
  - c ☐ both of these.

b Read the home page again. Underline the correct option to complete the sentences.

- 1 The hotel is in a beautiful setting by the side of a hill / river.
- 2 It is a fabulous place to chill out / warm up for the weekend.
- 3 The hotel offers a perfect combination of old and new / town and country.
- 4 The award-winning chef has only recently started / worked there for a while.
- 5 Both the toiletries and the vegetables are locally sourced / organically produced.
- 6 The menu has a range of mouth-watering local / international dishes.



Looking for a perfect weekend in the country? Ready to walk along towpaths and through beautiful rolling countryside? Keen to wind down with great meals served in a picturesque riverside setting? We have the place that was designed with you in mind.



Our magnificent sixteenth-century manor house has seven individually designed bedrooms, all with romantic four-poster beds, flat-screen TVs, WiFi and stunning views over the surrounding fields. After a long walk, relax in a deep bath with our own organic toiletries before going down for dinner.



For ten years, award-winning chef Simon Simpson has been delighting his customers with a mouth-watering selection of delicious dishes which combine the traditional values of locally sourced food and the flavours of contemporary cooking. Relax beneath our ancient beams, sip a relaxing drink in front of our roaring fire and eat with friends and family in our Scandinavian-style dining room. Modified on a weekly basis, reflecting seasonal produce, our à la carte menu will take your breath away. Using the finest vegetables and herbs from our own organic gardens, tender meat from local farms and fresh fish arriving daily, Simon concocts superbly balanced dishes, as delicious as they are nutritious. Lovingly prepared, the food has roots in the four corners of the world and you will definitely find something which suits your particular taste buds.



To end the weekend, work out in our state-of-the-art fitness centre or chill out in our Turkish steam room. Take a relaxing swim in our infinity pool or play tennis on our unique French clay court. Whatever you are looking for in a weekend away, we will find a way of giving you the perfect one.

## 2 WRITING SKILLS Promotional material; Using persuasive language

a Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

roaring deep stunning lovingly state-of-the-art romantic

- 1 Take a seat in front of a roaring open fire.
- 2 Work out in our state-of-the-art fitness centre.
- 3 Relax in a deep, warm bath.
- 4 Taste our lovingly prepared dishes.
- 5 All our rooms have stunning views.
- 6 Have a romantic, candle-lit dinner in our dining room.

## 3 WRITING

a Imagine a hotel, restaurant or café. Write four paragraphs to describe it on a website designed to encourage people to go there. Think what sort of people you want to attract as customers. Use this plan to help you:

- 1 Get your reader's attention.
- 2 Describe the place generally.
- 3 Go into more detail about the rooms, the food, the attractions, etc.
- 4 An invitation or other call to action.





# UNIT 8

## Reading and listening extension

### 1 READING

- a Read the article about extreme sports. Complete the summary of the article with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

use say force accompany climb  
find hang experience spend

<sup>1</sup> Climbing a large rock face can take several days, so climbers are sometimes <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to camp in tents that <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ from the side of the rock. Although most of us would <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the idea terrifying, climbers <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ that it is much less frightening than the actual climb. Ordinary people who are interested in <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the thrill of sleeping on a Portaledge can <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the services of specialist holiday companies. These companies provide instructors to <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ paying customers on their climb and <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the night with them.

- b According to the article, are the sentences true or false, or is there not enough information to be sure?

- 1 Climbing a vertical rock face uses a lot of physical and mental energy.
- 2 Portaledges are extremely light in weight.
- 3 Tommy Caldwell and Kevin Jorgeson were successful in climbing the Dawn Wall.
- 4 For some climbs, camping with a Portaledge is the only option.
- 5 Cory Rich usually worries that his Portaledge might not be attached well enough to the rock.
- 6 Falling ice and rocks have killed or injured several people sleeping on Portaledges.
- 7 Using a Portaledge in a tree is not at all exciting.
- 8 Holiday companies charge a lot of money for the experience of sleeping in a Portaledge.

- c Write an advert for a holiday company that specialises in unusual places to stay. Use this plan to help you or use ideas of your own:

- Describe some of the places your company offers (e.g. tree houses, ice hotels, underwater or underground rooms).
- Give some details of the sleeping experiences; which are good for deep sleep, which offer a stunning view, etc.
- Include some quotes from satisfied customers.

## Hanging on in for a good night's sleep

Imagine your dream holiday. A lazy day on a white sandy beach, a quick swim in the turquoise water, a delicious evening meal, drifting off to sleep in a soft, clean bed.

Now imagine spending hours making your way inch by inch up a sheer rock face, your muscles screaming for mercy and your brain almost exploding from the concentration required. And then, if you can, imagine that rather than descending to recover in comfort, you hang a tiny platform made from aluminium and canvas from the vertical side of your mountain and sleep there instead, hundreds of feet above the ground.

Sounds crazy? Well to most people it is, but for Tommy Caldwell and Kevin Jorgeson, the first climbers to conquer the infamous Dawn Wall in California's Yosemite National Park, the sleeping arrangements that fascinated and appalled the public were the least of their worries. As they later explained, sleeping inside their hanging tents is much less scary than climbing outside them!

This kind of extreme camping is far from unique amongst so-called 'big-wall' climbers, who actually have no alternative, since their ascents may take days or even weeks. Adventure photographer Cory Rich, who has himself climbed sections of the Dawn Wall, describes it as the 'ultimate camping location', and insists that after a hard day's climb he sleeps like a log. As long as he is satisfied that his Portaledge, as the portable sleeping

platforms are called, is securely fastened to the rock, he finds it easy to drop off to sleep.

Even restless sleepers do not need to worry, since they wear a harness at all times to stop them from rolling over the edge of their platforms. However, harnesses offer no protection from the other hazard: falling ice and rocks. Another photographer, Gordon Wiltsie, describes climbing in the Arctic spring, and seeing a lump of ice the size of a car hurtling past his bed. If it had hit him, it would certainly have been fatal.

Of course, you need to be very experienced to undertake these sorts of climbs, but for the ordinary person who craves the experience of sleeping suspended high above the ground, there are now holiday companies that can make it possible. One such firm, based in the German Alps, offers different levels of adventure. The lower levels involve tents hung from trees, which may sound tame until you learn that a) you need to climb a rope to reach them and b) they are exposed to the weather and can swing around alarmingly in high winds.

At the upper end of the scale, customers pay a substantial fee for the privilege of spending the day climbing with an instructor and then sleeping alongside them in a Portaledge at night. One customer, reviewing the experience, admitted that she didn't sleep a wink, but described watching the sun rising in the morning as one of the most amazing experiences of her life.



## 2 LISTENING

- a** **8.6** Listen to the conversation. Complete the sentences with the correct numbers.
- Ralf will be \_\_\_\_\_ years old on his next birthday.
  - He and his wife look after \_\_\_\_\_ of their grandchildren.
  - He says that people stop being appreciated when they are over \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Maria's friend is \_\_\_\_\_ years old.
- b** **8.6** Listen again. Underline the correct words to complete the sentences.
- Ralf is very *positive* / *anxious* / *negative* about his age.
  - Maria thinks he is lucky to have *so many grandchildren* / *good health* / *time to do what he wants*.
  - Maria says that older people do a lot of work *they don't want to do* / *in the home* / *without payment*.
  - Ralf's son *takes for granted* / *appreciates* / *doesn't realise* what Ralf and his wife do for him.
  - Maria's friend *has decided* / *doesn't want* / *may decide* to have plastic surgery.
  - Maria thinks that Ralf is behaving like a stereotypical *forgetful* / *bad-tempered* / *confused* old man.
- c** **8.6** Listen again. Tick (✓) the correct definition for each expression, as used in the conversation.
- count your blessings
    - ☐ to wish you had more good things in your life
    - ☒ to be grateful for the good things in your life
    - ☐ to have had a very good life
  - ageism
    - ☐ unfair advantages for old people because of their age
    - ☐ unfair treatment of young people because of their age
    - ☐ unfair treatment of old people because of their age
  - be a handful
    - ☐ to be difficult to control
    - ☐ to be too little of something
    - ☐ to cost a lot of money
  - grind to a halt
    - ☐ to divide something into small pieces
    - ☐ to be in a very difficult situation
    - ☐ to be unable to function
  - on the rubbish heap
    - ☐ of very poor quality
    - ☐ no longer valued
    - ☐ no longer able to function
  - I couldn't believe my ears!
    - ☐ I was unable to hear clearly.
    - ☐ I was very surprised.
    - ☐ I didn't understand what was said.
- d** Write a conversation between two people discussing the advantages and disadvantages of ageing. Think about these ideas or use ideas of your own:
- health
  - financial situation
  - family responsibilities
  - leisure time
  - wisdom and experience.

# Review and extension

## 1 GRAMMAR and VOCABULARY

Correct the errors in the underlined words.

- We were looking forward to sunbathing and to swim in the sea.  
We were looking forward to sunbathing and to swimming in the sea.
- I am sure you are as happy as I am to working on this project.
- Do not get stressed, otherways your performance will deteriorate further.
- Wow! You're off to NYC! If I have had enough money I'd have come with you.
- I love that place! In case, one day, I have children, I will take them there.
- If I were to watch that serial, it'll take me ages to catch up.
- The whole department needs to work out better ways of communication.
- Appreciated is very important. Money cannot buy this feeling.
- I'm worried that I'll come out in wrinkles when I get older.
- After eating the peanuts, she came out through a rash.
- Regular moisturising is a good way of avoiding dry skin.
- As you age, your skin loses its firmness and gets smooth.
- He's losing his hair. He's really telling his age.

## 2 WORDPOWER and

Rewrite the sentences. Replace the underlined words with the words in the box. Make any changes needed.

bits and pieces   ~~far and wide~~   far and away  
sick and tired   wear and tear

- The speakers at the conference came from many places.  
The ~~speakers at the conference~~ came from far and wide.
- I've just started ballet classes. They're supposed to be for adult beginners, but I'm easily the worst there!
- The doctor says the pain in my knee is from damage caused by everyday use so there's not much he can do.
- I didn't do much at the weekend. Just small tasks around the house, like vacuuming.
- My children argue all the time. I'm getting really annoyed about it.

## REVIEW YOUR PROGRESS

Look again at Review your progress on p.102 of the Student's Book. How well can you do these things now?

3 = very well   2 = well   1 = not so well

### I CAN ...

|   |                          |
|---|--------------------------|
| describe sleeping habits and routines     | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| talk about lifestyles and life expectancy | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| negotiate                                 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| write promotional material.               | <input type="checkbox"/> |



# 9A They did it all themselves

## 1 GRAMMAR

### Reflexive and reciprocal pronouns

a Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

ourselves herself yourself myself one another's  
each other themselves himself yourselves



- My grandparents often look at each other in a very caring way.
- All my colleagues were busy so I had to complete the project by \_\_\_\_\_.
- Do look after \_\_\_\_\_, Maria, it's a dangerous road at this time of night.
- My daughter injured \_\_\_\_\_ quite badly skiing last winter.
- Nobody was serving drinks so the man just helped \_\_\_\_\_ to another one.
- In a team it is best to be aware of \_\_\_\_\_ strengths and weaknesses.
- We looked at \_\_\_\_\_ in the photo and burst out laughing.
- The only advice I can give you all is to just be \_\_\_\_\_.
- My parents think of \_\_\_\_\_ as liberal but I find them quite strict.

b Underline the correct words to complete the sentences.


- We spent the first session getting to know one another / ourselves.
- After the humiliating home defeat, the coach was beside him / himself.
- The two leaders greeted each other / themselves warmly.
- Before the interview I spent about fifteen minutes relaxing / relaxing myself.
- The children cooked lunch today all by themselves / by them.
- My manager was the only person I knew so I sat down beside her / herself.
- My wife and I bought each other / ourselves gifts for our wedding anniversary.
- Nobody was in when I got home last night so I let me / myself in.

## 2 VOCABULARY Verbs with re-

a Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the box. There may be more than one possible answer.

recreate regain redevelop regenerate  
reinstate rejuvenate restore renovate

- Having lost her position as manager in the company, she was reinstated a few months later.
- After such a long illness, it took a long time for him to \_\_\_\_\_ his health.
- The play \_\_\_\_\_ the events that took place more than fifty years before.
- Her job is to \_\_\_\_\_ old paintings to the way they looked originally.
- The money will be used to \_\_\_\_\_ the commercial area damaged by the flooding.
- His new job seems to have \_\_\_\_\_ him. He is looking and acting so much younger.
- The city has plans to \_\_\_\_\_ the inner-city area with new roads and houses.
- The old hotel is currently being \_\_\_\_\_. The architect's plans look very contemporary.

b  Listen to the report. Then complete the sentences using the correct form of the words in brackets.

- The old Wellington waterfront needed to be regenerated (regenerate).
- Initially there were a number of options for \_\_\_\_\_ (redevelop) the area.
- After the \_\_\_\_\_ (renovate) it was important that the area be used for both work and leisure.
- One of the main aims was to \_\_\_\_\_ (restore) the area to its key central position.
- With the completion of the project the city has been completely \_\_\_\_\_ (rejuvenate).
- Shipping containers have \_\_\_\_\_ (revamp) to create performance spaces.
- A number of older buildings were \_\_\_\_\_ (repurpose).
- Since then Wellington \_\_\_\_\_ (regain) its position as a tourist destination.





# 9B They wanted a dramatic skyline and they got one

## 1 GRAMMAR Ellipsis and substitution

a Underline the briefest possible way to complete the sentences.

- They played the first set quicker than the second / they played the second / the second set.
- He played for Chelsea and then Roma / played next for Roma / did for Roma.
- He said he would give me a lift but he never did / never would / never had.
- The first two years here were good but the next two were not so / weren't / not.
- I've visited many countries but I've visited never / never visited / never Canada.
- I wanted to go to France on holiday but my wife wasn't / didn't / didn't want.



b Match the questions and sentences 1–6 with the responses a–f.

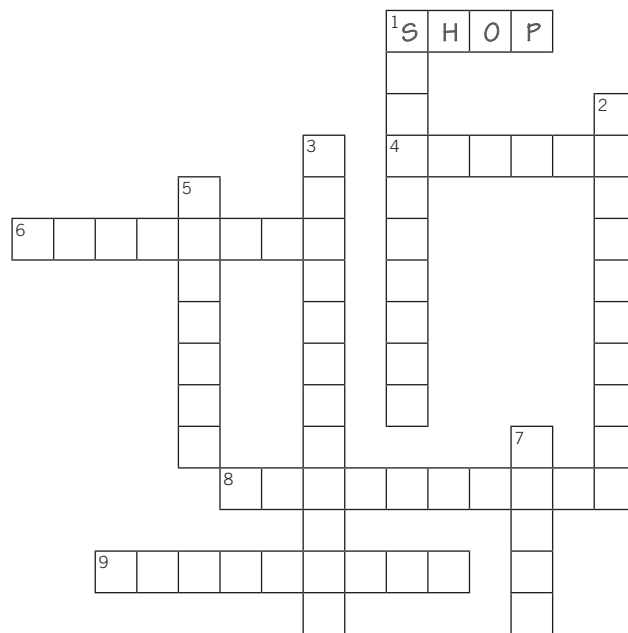
- ☒ I'm going to have the pasta. a Neither do I.
- ☐ Who's got some golf clubs I can borrow? b I have.
- ☐ Are we going the right way? c If not, I'll give you a call.
- ☐ I don't really like opera. d So am I.
- ☐ Sarah has had another baby. e I think so.
- ☐ I hope you get home in time. f Is that her third?

## 2 VOCABULARY Describing buildings

a Underline the correct words to complete the conversation between two architects.

- ANDREW** I hear there's a plan to renovate the <sup>1</sup>disused / unused power station as part of the redevelopment project.
- CAROL** That's right. The design looks really clever and turning it into both flats and a museum is really <sup>2</sup>innovative / imposing – I haven't seen that before. It will really stand out next to that <sup>3</sup>out-of-place / nondescript retail park which has nothing remotely interesting about it.
- ANDREW** What about the warehouse development that's just been completed?
- CAROL** Well, it's great to have studios for single people to live in, though I'm not so sure about the gold balconies on the penthouses! That's a bit <sup>4</sup>stunning / over the top in my opinion. A bit <sup>5</sup>tasteful / tasteless, frankly. Otherwise the design is beautiful, though.
- ANDREW** Yes, the design is certainly more <sup>6</sup>graceful / bland than that massive new tower block downtown which seems totally <sup>7</sup>innovative / out of place. It's right next to the cathedral, which looks very odd.
- CAROL** It might be in the wrong place but I find it rather <sup>8</sup>imposing / improving the way it dominates the old part of the town, and the views from the top are simply <sup>9</sup>dull / stunning.

b Complete the crossword puzzle.



### → Across

- a building or part of a building where you can buy goods
- a small apartment with one main room
- a house all on one floor with no stairs
- an area, usually out of town, where a number of different shops are located (6, 4)
- a large building used for storage

### ↓ Down

- an extremely tall city building
- a tall structure usually filled with offices or apartments (5, 5)
- a large construction built to generate electricity (5, 7)
- a large, impressive house
- a small house usually found in rural areas and often made of wood

## 3 PRONUNCIATION Word stress

a 9.2 Listen to the words. What stress pattern do they have? Complete the table with the words.

bungalow cabin detached apartment estate  
housing skyscraper mansion tasteless nondescript  
graceful innovative imposing stunning power

| o0 | 0o | o0o | 0oo      | 0ooo |
|----|----|-----|----------|------|
|    |    |     | bungalow |      |
|    |    |     |          |      |
|    |    |     |          |      |
|    |    |     |          |      |

# 9C Everyday English

Let's not jump to conclusions

## 1 USEFUL LANGUAGE

### Dealing with conflict

**a** Underline the correct words to complete the conversation.


- TONY** Is that you, Sophie?  
**SOPHIE** Yes it is. How can I help?  
**TONY** This is Tony Allen from GK Partners.  
 I'm calling to express my utter  
<sup>1</sup>*misunderstanding / disbelief*.  
**SOPHIE** What seems to be the problem, Tony?  
**TONY** How can I put this? I understand you are  
 in talks with our main competitor.  
**SOPHIE** Well, I'm not, but a colleague is.  
**TONY** I'm <sup>2</sup>*absolutely / very* lost for words.  
**SOPHIE** What can I say? I take <sup>3</sup>*utter / full*  
 responsibility, but you mustn't overreact.  
**TONY** This is <sup>4</sup>*above / beyond* belief. I thought  
 we had an agreement?  
**SOPHIE** Let's not <sup>5</sup>*run / jump* to any conclusions.  
 We are simply talking to them, that is all.  
**TONY** But you have no <sup>6</sup>*duty / right* to work  
 with both of us. What <sup>7</sup>*on earth / the*  
*world* happened to our confidentiality  
 agreement?  
**SOPHIE** There's no reason to <sup>8</sup>*shout / raise* your  
 voice. I'm sure we can find a solution.  
**TONY** You'd better, otherwise there will be  
<sup>9</sup>*results / consequences*.  
**SOPHIE** I understand where you're coming from.  
 I will <sup>10</sup>*investigate / study* and get straight  
 back to you.

**b**  **9.3** Listen and check.

**c** Put the words in the correct order to make complaints and responses.

- 1 any / let's / not / to / conclusions / jump .  
Let's not jump to any conclusions.
- 2 investigating / matter / have / intention / of / every / the / I .  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 no / to / reason / voice / there's / your / raise .  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 owe / an / me / explanation / you .  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I / consequences / you / there / will / warn / be .  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 cannot / disbelief / my / utter / words / express .  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 you / like / responsibility / to / I'd / full / take .  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 failed / your / you've / to / responsibilities / fulfil .  
 \_\_\_\_\_

## 2 PRONUNCIATION Sound and spelling: foreign words in English

**a**  **9.4** Listen to the words in the first box. Match each word to the language it comes from in the second box. Complete the table.

abseil baguette cello mosquito

French German Portuguese Italian

| Word | Original language | Meaning   |
|------|-------------------|---|
| 1    |                   | use a rope to go down a steep slope                     |
| 2    |                   | a long stick of white bread                             |
| 3    |                   | a wooden musical instrument with four strings and a bow |
| 4    |                   | a small flying insect that bites people and animals     |

# 9D Skills for Writing

The impact on cities is plain to see



## 1 READING

a Read the essay. Tick (✓) the correct answers.

- 1 The opening paragraph ...
  - a ☐ introduces the topic.
  - b ☐ gives examples.
  - c ☒ does both of these.
- 2 The second paragraph is mainly about ...
  - a ☐ changes in shipping.
  - b ☐ the decline of the docklands.
  - c ☐ a solution.
- 3 Migration from the docklands had led to ...
  - a ☐ poverty.
  - b ☐ homelessness.
  - c ☐ an increase in crime.
- 4 The fourth paragraph focuses on ...
  - a ☐ an example of regeneration.
  - b ☐ statistics.
  - c ☐ the process.
- 5 Urban tourists ...
  - a ☐ attend events.
  - b ☐ visit cities.
  - c ☐ both attend events and visit cities.
- 6 The last paragraph offers ...
  - a ☐ the writer's standpoint.
  - b ☐ another example.
  - c ☐ a plan.

b Read the essay. Are the sentences true or false?

- 1 The decline of urban docklands is a direct result of modern shipping requirements.
- 2 These days, crew members spend a lot of time in port spending money.
- 3 Run-down dockland areas have high crime figures.
- 4 The Baltimore regeneration was mainly for tourists.
- 5 Baltimore handled the planning stages well.
- 6 Overall, the writer is not in favour of the regeneration of dockland areas.

## 2 WRITING SKILLS Discussion essays; Linking: reason and result

a Underline the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 The growth in the container industry has been a key factor / issue in the decline of certain docks.
- 2 Container ships are getting larger and because of this / the reason for this they require much bigger docks to berth at.
- 3 Because / Due to the increase in the size of the ships, larger and more efficient cranes are needed.
- 4 As a result of / Result of the automation of loading, fewer manual workers are employed.
- 5 The regeneration of the waterfront in Baltimore led to / resulted an increase in the number of urban tourists.
- 6 Restaurants, cafés and cinemas have thereby / therefore done well from the redevelopment.

All over the world, from Baltimore to Auckland, coastal cities are facing the same issue: the regeneration of their docklands. These areas, which were once at the very heart of urban activity, have emptied over time as modern shipping requirements have moved the docks further out of town. The resultant migration of population and decline in commercial activity are two effects which therefore need to be addressed.

A key factor in this has been the growth of the container industry, now responsible for over 75% of goods transported worldwide. As a consequence of this, ships have progressively increased in size to such a degree that larger docks are required and more sophisticated and efficient cranes. This has led to the decline of city-centre docks along with services and homes connected to them. Another direct result of this is that ships spend less time in port, and thus there are fewer crew members spending money in these areas. One alternative source of revenue is the cruise industry, with a number of cities building facilities for cruise liners which can bring over 5,000 tourists into a place in one day.

As a result of this migration from waterfront areas, hundreds of acres of land have been left to waste away. This has meant in some cities an increase in crime in these parts as gangs have taken control and squatters have taken up residence. As the situation has got worse, the appeal of these areas for locals or tourists has decreased. This vicious circle can only be broken through redevelopment.

Governments, therefore, have had to make important financial and strategic decisions about these waterfronts, whether they are giving onto a river, a lake, a bay or the sea. In Baltimore, for example, the decision was taken to regenerate the docklands as an area for professional offices and small start-ups as well as rebranding the area as a destination for conferences, events, cyclists and urban tourists. This meant that all the services and infrastructure required for these segments had to be put in place. I think the statistics attached prove that the project was a great success, due in part to the consultation and planning stages, which led to a unified plan.

In conclusion, I would state that although it is sad to see the decline of such important historical waterfront areas, the resulting renovation and refurbishment can lead to economic and social improvements of great value. I would therefore strongly advocate regeneration plans which bring services, activity and people back to these wastelands and which restore them to an important role in the city.

## 3 WRITING

a Think about a city or a town you know. Describe a redevelopment which has happened or could happen. Use these questions and the plan to help you:

- Why did or does the area require redevelopment?
- How was it or will it be redeveloped?
- What have been or will be the long-term benefits?
- Are there or were there any risks to the success of the development?

Plan:

- |                |              |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1 Introduction | 3 Risks      |
| 2 Benefits     | 4 Conclusion |



# UNIT 9

## Reading and listening extension

### 1 READING

**a** Read the article. Match the summaries a–f to the paragraphs 1–6.

- a ☐ Describes the specific legislation that controls the limits of the city
- b ☐ Describes Portland's residents' love of products from their own region
- c ☐ Describes Portland's environmental status
- d ☐ Talks about allowing people to live near their work
- e ☒ Describes the effect of urban planning on Portland
- f ☐ Talks about the street food stalls

**b** Read the article again. Tick (✓) the correct answers.

- 1 Using urban planners in 1903 was ...
  - a ☐ quite common.
  - b ☐ a good idea.
  - c ☒ very unusual.
- 2 Compared to Portland, most cities ...
  - a ☐ are allowed to spread out more.
  - b ☐ have more public transport.
  - c ☐ are more untidy.
- 3 The UGB means that people in Portland can't build ...
  - a ☐ high-density housing.
  - b ☐ new homes.
  - c ☐ housing on farmland.
- 4 The City Council is trying to ...
  - a ☐ improve the climate.
  - b ☐ carry out effective environmental policies.
  - c ☐ take good care of the city's parks.
- 5 The city's food stalls do not ...
  - a ☐ look particularly impressive.
  - b ☐ serve local food.
  - c ☐ have enough room to operate.
- 6 A lot of US cities are ...
  - a ☐ losing population.
  - b ☐ starting to look alike.
  - c ☐ trying to copy Portland.

**c** According to the article, are the sentences true or false?

- 1 Portland no longer uses steam trains.
- 2 The area defined by the UGB has not changed since 1979.
- 3 The downtown area used to be deserted in the evenings.
- 4 Portland is more environmentally friendly than Reykjavik.
- 5 It is easier to walk than to drive in Portland's downtown.
- 6 The food stalls fit in well with the surrounding architecture.

**d** Write a short opinion piece about urban planning in a town or city you know well. Include the following:

- a basic description of the town or city
- what you know or can guess about how it has been planned
- which aspects of planning you think are successful
- which aspects are unsuccessful
- what improvements you would like to see.

## URBAN PLANNING AND THE 'WEIRD' CITY



**1** The city of Portland, in the north-west of the US, is widely admired for a reason that may initially sound dull, but in fact has a profound impact on the lives of its residents: its urban planning. In a move that was highly innovative at the time, the city employed urban planners as far back as 1903, with the result that instead of the messy sprawl of a typical American city and the consequent over-reliance on cars, Portland is a compact and contained unit with a highly developed system of public transport. It even boasts the only functioning steam locomotives in a US city!

**2** Central to the character of Portland is its 'urban growth boundary' (UGB), a planning regulation which came into force in 1979 and strictly limits development, distinguishing clearly between areas where high-density housing is permitted and agricultural areas where it is not. Although the UGB has been extended once, it does ensure that any urban expansion is the result of a conscious decision by residents themselves, and not the random growth seen in many other US cities.

**3** Another major factor in the shaping of the city was the decision made by the city authorities in 1972 to regenerate the city-centre area. Before then, it had emptied at 5 pm every day when workers left for home. This led to major redevelopment in three main zones and the construction of thousands of new housing units, all of which contributed to a dramatic change in the character of the entire area, including a rejuvenation of the city's cultural and artistic life.

**4** Portland is built near the point where two major rivers meet. It is a city of bridges, and looks especially stunning at night. In another bold move, the City Council adopted an ambitious climate action plan in 2009, and some say that only Reykjavik can now claim to be a greener city. Portland's over 10,000 acres of public parks are well cared for, and the revamped downtown area is geared far more towards pedestrians than cars, a fact which encourages its famous street food scene.

**5** The 600-plus food carts may look somewhat out of place amongst the skyscrapers and modern buildings, but they are one of Portland's main attractions. From these rather nondescript stalls (known as 'pods') comes the mouth-watering selection of dishes from all over the world that have made the city a foodie's paradise.

**6** In fact, one of the most striking things about Portland is its focus on the local, with much food consumed in the city coming from the farms around its perimeter. Compared with other places, it appears less affected by the seemingly unstoppable drift to sameness. You could say that Portland has deliberately associated itself with a particular, slightly alternative, lifestyle and it is probably this that gives rise to the city's proud but unofficial slogan: 'Keep Portland weird'.

# Review and extension

## 2 LISTENING

- a 2.5 Listen to the conversation between Ben and Eva. Tick (✓) the best summary 1–3.
- ☐ Ben and Eva are talking about some new apartment blocks. Eva is very critical of the way housing is being built in the city, and would prefer to see the city spread outwards a little.
  - ☐ Ben tells Eva about the new apartment blocks by the river. He thinks they are extremely attractive and would like to buy one. He is horrified by Eva's idea of building around the edges of the city.
  - ☐ Ben and Eva are discussing the urban planning of their city. They would like the council to have more control over housing policy, but Eva does not care very much because she has plans to move away.
- b 2.5 Listen again. Who says these things – Ben, Eva or neither of them? Tick (✓) the correct box.

|   | Ben | Eva | Neither of them |
|---|-----|-----|-----------------|
| 1 The area by the city looks attractive now.                                | ✓   |     |                 |
| 2 The apartment blocks are mainly for commuters.                            |     |     |                 |
| 3 Mixed housing is less profitable for developers.                          |     |     |                 |
| 4 The council has government funding for any legal action it needs to take. |     |     |                 |
| 5 It is important to preserve the green belt.                               |     |     |                 |
| 6 People living near the green belt strongly oppose any building there.     |     |     |                 |
| 7 They would like to become a councillor.                                   |     |     |                 |
| 8 They are planning to restore a house.                                     |     |     |                 |

- c Write a conversation between two people discussing the housing situation in your country. Think about these questions or use ideas of your own:
- Is there sufficient housing in your country?
  - If so, how was that achieved? If not, what is preventing housing being built?
  - Is housing (private or rented) affordable? Is it of a good standard?
  - What measures could be taken to improve housing?
  - How important is it to maintain green spaces in and around towns and cities?

## 1 GRAMMAR

Correct the errors in the underlined words.

- Thanks for letting me stay with you during my time in England. I really felt myself part of the family.  
Thanks for letting me stay with you during my time in England. I really felt part of the family.
- It was a very successful event and all the participants enjoyed.
- We spent a lot of time this weekend just talking to ourselves about all kinds of things.
- Look after your self while we are away and keep the house tidy.
- I was disappointed with the film because was too long and the story was very predictable.
- The gracefull buildings had been there for countless generations.
- The tour was well organised, but it was a bit untasteful, like almost all package tours.
- The results showed us that people want an innovating design, worthy of such a great city.
- Our company wants to renew all the offices in the building.
- We can improve the image of the city by restauring our monuments and historic buildings.

## 2 WORDPOWER *build*

Complete the sentences with *up*, *on*, *in*, or *around*.

- I drink so much coffee I think I've built up a tolerance to it. I seem to need to drink more every day!
- As a business, I think we really need to build \_\_\_\_\_ our strengths – so concentrate on what we're good at, and not worry about the other things.
- My husband's parents haven't spoken to his grandparents for years. It started as a small disagreement, and then it built \_\_\_\_\_ into a huge argument.
- I went to see a play last night. It was really interesting. The whole thing was built \_\_\_\_\_ the main character – a tall, mysterious man who walks around with a briefcase.
- It's fascinating what they build \_\_\_\_\_ to cars nowadays – satnav, Bluetooth connectivity, digital radio ... but what I really want is a cup holder!



## REVIEW YOUR PROGRESS

Look again at Review your progress on p.114 of the Student's Book. How well can you do these things now?

3 = very well    2 = well    1 = not so well


### I CAN ...

|                                      |                          |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| talk about city life and urban space | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| describe architecture and buildings  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| deal with conflict                   | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| write a discussion essay.            | <input type="checkbox"/> |

# 10A I really wish I'd been on time

## 1 GRAMMAR

### Regret and criticism structures

a  10.1 Listen to the story. Are the sentences true or false?

- 1 His plane was late, which delayed the drive to the venue.
- 2 He should have arrived the day before.
- 3 He didn't have tea because he wanted to check his talk.
- 4 Luckily, he had printed out his slides.
- 5 The technician was good and fixed everything.
- 6 The room was a good size.
- 7 They managed to start only thirty minutes late.
- 8 He actually enjoyed giving the presentation in the end.

b Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

- 1 He should have arrived (arrive) the day before.
- 2 If there \_\_\_\_\_ (be) less traffic, it wouldn't have taken two hours to get to the venue.
- 3 If he hadn't had tea, he \_\_\_\_\_ (have) time to check everything.
- 4 He regrets \_\_\_\_\_ (print) out his slides.
- 5 Five minutes wouldn't have been enough if the technician \_\_\_\_\_ (be) so competent.
- 6 If people hadn't kept arriving, he could \_\_\_\_\_ (start) on time.
- 7 They ought \_\_\_\_\_ (give) him a larger room.
- 8 Things \_\_\_\_\_ (go) better but on the whole, the presentation was a success.

## 2 PRONUNCIATION

### Word groups and main stress

a  10.2 Listen and underline the stressed word in each word group.

- 1 If only she had asked me ...
- 2 Had the weather been better ...
- 3 I should have realised ...
- 4 You might have told me ...
- 5 I really wish I'd been there.
- 6 He ought to have known ...
- 7 It's about time they ...
- 8 We should never have gone.



## 3 VOCABULARY Communication verbs

a Match the sentences and questions 1–5 with the responses a–e.

- 1 ☒ a How was the meeting? Did they present the strategy?
  - 2 ☐ b They backed up the arguments for change very convincingly.
  - 3 ☐ c Why did they need two hours to demonstrate the new approach to time management?
  - 4 ☐ d They definitely demonstrated their understanding of digital marketing, didn't they?
  - 5 ☐ e What do you think of those two who attacked the policies?
- a Do you think so? I wasn't totally sold on the idea. It takes time.  
b I agree, it took too long and they went into far too much detail.  
c Well, that's a bit strong, they were just voicing their concerns.  
d Well, they didn't go into the finer points but they certainly summarised the key ideas.  
e Yes, but more examples to illustrate the concepts would have helped.

b Underline the correct words to complete the email.

Hi Elaine,

Here's some feedback on the event I went to the other day.

The first speaker <sup>1</sup>addressed / spoke / approached the conference on the issue of sustainable tourism. He <sup>2</sup>showed / illustrated / underlined his points very well, with some quotes from famous explorers, which was a neat way of doing it.

The next speaker then moved <sup>3</sup>away / on / out to a slightly different topic and talked about a project in Costa Rica. She <sup>4</sup>cleared / demonstrated / manifested a new approach to research and then <sup>5</sup>presented / told / had her results. The approach looks interesting, although she didn't go into all <sup>6</sup>the information / the finer details / a full discussion. She <sup>7</sup>finalised / ended up / concluded by saying more time would be needed to assess its true value. The organiser then thanked all those present for attending and also paid <sup>8</sup>tribute / praise / out to Charles, who has been so influential over the years (and is now retiring).

At this point, there were one or two throwaway <sup>9</sup>remarks / whispers / speeches about the poor quality of the refreshments, but overall it seemed to have been a successful morning.

Thanks for giving me the opportunity to go.

Best, James



# 10B It's said that peacock feathers are bad luck

## 1 GRAMMAR Passive reporting verbs

a Complete the text with the words in the box.

being generally viewed   been proved   claimed  
been perceived   ~~believed~~   been said  
considered   is known   have originated   thought to

It is widely <sup>1</sup> believed that superstition has a great influence on our lives. Scientists accept its importance and it is actually <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ that many superstitions have a factual or scientific origin. It has <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ for hundreds of years, for example, that if the sky is red at night, there will be good weather the following day. It has since <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ scientifically that as the sun sets it creates red light if it is shining through calm, still air.

Colours are important elements in superstition throughout the world, with the rainbow <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ as a good luck symbol, either because it is a natural sign of the end of bad weather or because it is one of the few natural phenomena with the full range of colours. Scientifically, it is a fact that you cannot physically get to the end of a rainbow. This may be why it is <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to be an extremely lucky place.

White <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to represent purity in many cultures and on New Year's Eve in Brazil, people wear white as it is <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ bring good luck for the following year. If you are by the sea, you are also encouraged to jump the waves seven times. Both of these traditions are said to <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ as acts to the goddess of the seas to bring prosperity and security, but the number seven crops up in traditions all over the world – probably because it has always <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ as a perfect number, again a mathematical truth behind the superstition.

b Underline the correct words to complete the sentences.

- All over the world, the ladybird *is being said / said / been said* to bring good luck.
- Vikings are said to *have thought / having thought / think* of acorns as lucky charms.
- New Year's resolutions *are / are being / have been* believed to have been introduced in Babylon.
- In the old days, it *has been / was / was being* assumed that the Earth was flat.
- The number eight and the colour red *are known / are being known / have known* to be symbols of good luck in China.
- Seeing a black cat *is / has / are* thought to bring good luck in some cultures and bad luck in others.
- Stories about the abominable snowman *have been shown / are showing / are shown* to be false.
- In Scotland, it is *required / said / hoped* that your first visitor of the year should be tall, dark and handsome.



## 2 VOCABULARY

### Superstitions, customs and beliefs

a Complete the words.

- A Good luck with your driving test. I hope you pass this time!

B Thanks, it would definitely be a case of third time I u c k y though, wouldn't it?
- A Aren't you going to have a second go at becoming team leader?

B Well, I'm not sure. I think I might be tempting f \_ \_ \_ if I tried again.
- A Have you got your exam results yet?

B No, but fingers c \_ \_ \_ \_ d I've been successful this time.
- A That restaurant you've booked looks really expensive.

B Don't worry, I've taken out extra cash just to be on the s \_ \_ \_ side.
- A I hear you're going skiing. Be careful you don't break anything.

B Well, touch w \_ \_ \_ , I've been skiing for over ten years and never had an injury yet!



b 10.3 Listen and check.

c Replace the underlined words with the words in the box.

convinced   persuasive   far-fetched  
gullible   dubious   plausible

- They were too willing to believe what they were told.  
gullible
- She was completely certain he was telling the truth.
- The story was believable because it matched the facts.
- Their explanation was exaggerated and difficult to believe.
- It was very believable because it was well argued.
- I was not sure whether to believe them or not.

## 3 PRONUNCIATION Consonant groups

a How many consonant groups are there in each sentence? Write 4, 5, 6 or 7.

- ☒ Acorns protect you from lightning strikes.
- ☐ People claim that ladybirds bring good luck.
- ☐ The four-leaf clover is a plant which brings good fortune.
- ☐ This charm bracelet brings strength and happiness.
- ☐ I have a rabbit's foot in my sports bag.

b 10.4 Listen and check.

# 10C Everyday English

## Before we move on

### 1 USEFUL LANGUAGE Turn-taking

a Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

after you   before we go on   as I was saying   do go on  
sorry to interrupt   ~~you could start~~   speaking of   you first

A So, thanks for coming, Anthony. We were very interested in your proposal.

B So perhaps <sup>1</sup> you could start by ...

C Sorry, but could I have a glass of water?

B Of course. Here you are.

A Now <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. We are very interested in your ideas and wanted to find out some more.

C Where ...?

A Please, <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ ...

C I was just going to ask – where would you like me to start?

A Well, I understand that you train people in making presentations.

C That's true, but <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ can I just say that my main job is acting? I do a wide range of radio and TV shows. Theatre as well, obviously.

B <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, but will we have seen you on TV?

C Possibly. Four or five years ago. Anyway, as I was saying, I work with politicians and business leaders to help them give more effective presentations.

A & B So how ...

B Sorry, <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

A How do you train them?

C Well, we work a lot on posture, breathing, relaxation. Some voice drills and so on.

A <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ posture, is it an important part of the training?

C Yes, in fact we warm up with a lot of posture exercises which allow us to have better control over our bodies. It's a technique a lot of actors use.

A Thanks. <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

C Where was I?

b  10.5 Listen and check.


c Complete the table with the words in the box.

~~After you:~~   Before we go on, ...   As I was saying, ...  
Can I ask a quick question?  
Sorry to interrupt, but ...   Perhaps you could start by ...  
Speaking of X, ...   You first.   Where was I?

|                                  |            |
|----------------------------------|------------|
| Take a turn                      |            |
| Pass a turn                      | After you. |
| Signal that you want to continue |            |

### 2 PRONUNCIATION

#### Tone in question tags

a  10.6 Listen to the questions. Is the intonation rising (↗) or falling (↘)? Tick (✓) the correct box.

|                                      | ↗                                   | ↘                        |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 You can't give me a hand, can you? | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 It was a great film, wasn't it?    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 He's not available, is he?         | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 That's your bag, isn't it?         | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 That wasn't your phone, was it?    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6 You can speak German, can't you?   | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7 That wasn't our flight, was it?    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 8 It won't hurt, will it?            | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 9 Your boss is coming, isn't he?     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 10 It isn't time already, is it?     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/> |

# 10D Skills for Writing

It's an intense and inspiring story

## REVIEWS

**Not me**, directed by 50-year-old German Thomas Kuhfeldt, is an action thriller about a middle-aged Scotsman who takes on, and beats, people who are trying to set him up and destroy his clean-cut reputation in the process. Ned McFarlane, a retired lawyer and semi-professional kick-boxer, is played by newcomer Stephen Clown. Somehow, the character rings true, even though McFarlane's status as an action hero initially seems somewhat improbable. I recently killed two hours on a plane watching this film.

The film is set in the main character's home village in eastern Scotland and, whilst the scenery is stunning, the sleepy setting reduces the impact of the action scenes. McFarlane is set up by an ex-client for a murder that happened 20 years previously, and he spends the film trying to prove his innocence. His daughter remains a close ally throughout the film, although McFarlane becomes increasingly paranoid about who is really on his side.

The fast-moving plot isn't particularly credible. McFarlane's apparently squeaky-clean, fairly uninteresting past turns out to be murkier than it first appeared, with characters from the kick-boxing underworld emerging at different points in the film. McFarlane eventually seems to have enough evidence to prove that he is not the killer, but, instead of taking this to the police, he decides to trap the killer himself, with action-packed but fairly predictable consequences.

Every cliché of the genre is then enacted including the death-defying car-chase, the miraculous escape, outdoing the dim-witted villains and a finale set in a beach-side home. The stunning special effects are particularly well done.

I won't spoil the ending because if you don't guess it after about ten minutes, you really aren't concentrating. All in all, it is a very easy film to watch and if you like black-and-white characters and unsubtle dialogue, you will have a great two hours.

### 1 READING

**a** Read the film review. Tick (✓) the information included in the review.

- 1 ☐ The names of most of the leading actors
- 2 ☐ Where the reviewer watched it
- 3 ☐ The location for the film
- 4 ☐ The reviewer's opinion about the plot
- 5 ☐ Why McFarlane doesn't go to the police
- 6 ☐ Examples of dialogue
- 7 ☐ How the film ends
- 8 ☐ The reviewer's recommendation

**b** Read the review again. Tick (✓) the correct answers.

- 1 The main character isn't \_\_\_\_\_.  
a ☐ a good actor   b ☐ popular   c ☒ well known
- 2 McFarlane is a very \_\_\_\_\_ character.  
a ☐ violent   b ☐ vengeful   c ☐ believable
- 3 His daughter is very \_\_\_\_\_ of her father.  
a ☐ trusting   b ☐ proud   c ☐ supportive
- 4 His earlier life turns out to be more \_\_\_\_\_ than initially suggested.  
a ☐ boring   b ☐ complex   c ☐ interesting
- 5 According to the reviewer, the plot is \_\_\_\_\_.  
a ☐ hard to believe  
b ☐ easy to follow  
c ☐ full of twists and turns
- 6 A lot of the scenes in the film are \_\_\_\_\_ of the genre.  
a ☐ best   b ☐ tired   c ☐ typical
- 7 According to the reviewer, the ending is not difficult to \_\_\_\_\_.  
a ☐ believe   b ☐ guess   c ☐ remember
- 8 The film is recommended \_\_\_\_\_.  
a ☐ wholeheartedly  
b ☐ with certain reservations  
c ☐ very highly

### 2 WRITING SKILLS Film reviews; Concise description

**a** Rewrite the underlined words to make the sentences more concise.

- 1 Studio Ghibli, which is a Japanese company, is famous for anime films.  
*Studio Ghibli, a Japanese company, is famous for anime films.*
- 2 In *Far From the Madding Crowd*, Bathsheba, who is independent and determined, has to choose between three very different men.
- 3 When he realises that she is a rival bookstore owner, Tom Hanks's character in *You've Got Mail* doesn't reveal his identity to his online friend.
- 4 Scarlett Johansson, who was born in New York City, has films in her blood – her grandfather was a screenwriter.
- 5 Because she has lost everything, Scarlett O'Hara could be seen as a broken woman at the end of *Gone with the Wind*.
- 6 *A Trip to the Moon*, which was produced in 1902, was one of the first colour films.

### 3 WRITING

**a** Write a film review. Use these questions and the plan to help you:

- What kind of film is it?
- What is the plot?
- Who are the main characters?
- What is your opinion of the film?

Plan:

- 1 Introduce the film.
- 2 Describe the characters and plot.
- 3 Weigh up the good and bad points.
- 4 Make a recommendation.



# UNIT 10

## Reading and listening extension

### 1 READING

**a** Read the blog post. Underline the correct words to complete the sentences.

- The author *believes* / *doesn't believe* that feng shui works.
- Her friend Rob *takes* / *doesn't take* the same view as her.
- She thinks the claims made for Ba Gua mirrors are *realistic* / *unrealistic*.
- She describes the dangers of pointed objects in a *sarcastic* / *serious* way.
- The way she tried to discuss the mirrors with Rob was *polite* / *impolite*.

**b** Read the blog post again. Are the sentences true or false?

- Feng shui has been used for a long time.
- The author doesn't care at all that many people believe in it.
- She believes that good luck charms should never be displayed in people's homes.
- The website about Ba Gua mirrors contained warnings about using them wrongly.

- The author thinks you could have bad experiences from using them inside.
- She now feels threatened by the lamppost outside her window.
- She genuinely wants to understand Rob's beliefs about feng shui.
- She is happy with the way their discussion about it went.
- Rob was very polite and tactful in the way he answered.
- He feels that being rational at all times can have negative consequences.

**c** Write a blog post about things that people in your country do for good luck. Think about these questions or use ideas of your own:

- How long have these good luck customs existed?
- Are they connected with specific times of the year, e.g. New Year?
- Do young people do them, or only older people?
- Do you do them yourself?
- Do people really believe in them, or are they simply part of a cultural tradition?

LATEST BLOG

OLDER POSTS

ABOUT

## Notes from a rationalist

My friend Rob is really into feng shui. He honestly believes that we can improve our lives immeasurably by turning the sofa to face a different direction. Oh dear, there I go already, poking fun at my friend's deeply held belief. In fact, I'm not sure that Rob does consider me a friend any more, ever since I admitted that feng shui seems like a load of far-fetched nonsense to me.

OK, let's try harder. Feng shui is – if I've understood it correctly – an ancient Chinese practice based on the idea that the way we design and arrange the direction of our buildings and their contents affects the flow of energy in a favourable or unfavourable way. It's something to do with balancing the passive 'yin' with the active 'yang' forces.

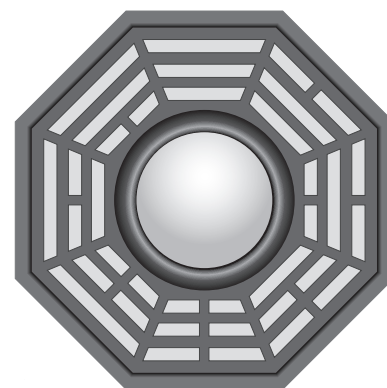
I have to admit that an awful lot of people take feng shui seriously, so who am I to say they are wrong? But I did find my credulity stretched to the limit again the other day, when Rob told me about 'Ba Gua mirrors'. These are placed on the outside of your house, above your front door, and are believed to both ward off evil and bring good fortune to those who enter.

I do get that. Almost every culture has similar good luck charms: horseshoes, rabbits' feet, or those blue and white glass eye things you see everywhere in Greece and Turkey. I can go along with that as a bit of harmless, decorative fun. But then I went on a website that sells these Ba Gua mirrors, and I'm afraid my sceptical side was reinforced again.

'NEVER use a Ba Gua inside a house or office', the site insists. Apparently there is a type of Ba Gua for indoor use, but this can only be sold to 'trained practitioners'. Well, obviously you need to be highly trained; just imagine what disasters you could cause by hanging the wrong type of mirror in your living room. Oops, sorry Rob, there I go again.

The website then explains the purpose of the Ba Gua mirror. Apparently it's to 'ward off sharp or pointed objects, such as traffic, lampposts, corners of houses pointing at you or anything that you feel is threatening'. Well, do you know what, there's a lamppost, right outside my bedroom window, and until I read that, it hadn't even occurred to me to think of it as 'threatening'. Silly me, I'd thought it was there to make walking down the street safer.

I accept that I should never have said that to Rob, though. I do value our friendship and I know we're never going to agree about this. But another part of me is genuinely curious. It's because I do respect Rob's intelligence that I'm so intrigued about how he can find this stuff plausible. Still, I really wish I'd phrased my questions more tactfully, because Rob responded with some pretty frank views of his own. He said that my sneering at things I don't understand is not only insulting, but also indicates a major lack in my own life. By concentrating only on what is logical and rational, he says, I'm closing myself off to much of what makes life so wonderful. Ouch.



LIKE | COMMENT | SHARE

## 2 LISTENING

**a** **10.7** Listen to the conversation between Louis and Christina. Tick (✓) the presentation topics at the conference which are mentioned.

- 1 ☒ Reading tasks
- 2 ☐ Motivating students
- 3 ☐ Managing behaviour in the classroom
- 4 ☐ Vocabulary learning
- 5 ☐ Improving pronunciation
- 6 ☐ Using digital media
- 7 ☐ Teaching grammar
- 8 ☐ Improving writing skills

**b** **10.7** Listen again. Tick (✓) the correct answers.

- 1 How does Christina feel about the conference so far?
  - a ☐ She thinks it is quite interesting.
  - b ☒ She rather regrets coming.
  - c ☐ She can't concentrate because she is thinking about her work.
- 2 Why was Christina surprised that one of the speakers read out his presentation?
  - a ☐ Because presenters do not usually do that.
  - b ☐ Because he had plenty of time to learn it.
  - c ☐ Because teachers should know how to present information well.
- 3 How did Christina feel at the end of his presentation?
  - a ☐ She nearly fell asleep because she was so bored.
  - b ☐ She was interested in some of the details he gave.
  - c ☐ She considered leaving because she was so bored.
- 4 Why did Christina dislike the author's presentation?
  - a ☐ Because she wasn't interested in her ideas on vocabulary learning.
  - b ☐ Because its main aim was to sell the speaker's books.
  - c ☐ Because she couldn't understand a lot of it.
- 5 How does Louis feel about the presentations he has attended?
  - a ☐ He now has too many ideas buzzing round in his head.
  - b ☐ He has found them practical but slightly dull.
  - c ☐ He has found them useful and stimulating.
- 6 What does Christina say about Selma Green?
  - a ☐ That she doesn't want to see her because she has already heard her talk.
  - b ☐ That she came out to dinner with her and her colleagues after her talk.
  - c ☐ That she is an interesting and charming speaker.

**c** Write a conversation between two people at a conference discussing the talks that they have heard. Think about these questions or use ideas of your own.

- What is the theme or purpose of the conference?
- How many speakers have they heard?
- Who was the best speaker? Who was the worst? Why?
- Have either of the people given a presentation at the conference themselves? How did it go?

## Review and extension

### 1 GRAMMAR and VOCABULARY

Correct the errors in the underlined words.

- 1 I wish you can find time to meet me during my visit.  
I wish you could find time to meet me during my visit.
- 2 It is regarded that Pelé is the best footballer ever.
- 3 The price of oil was announced to be cut by 5%.
- 4 If only did they speak another language, they would have a more international outlook.
- 5 I told myself not to panic. I didn't know what I had to do.
- 6 I think of all the things that I would like to do but didn't have the time.
- 7 If I would have known that I had relatives in London, I had visited you before.
- 8 The majority of people are absolutely persuaded that fate rules their lives.
- 9 In my opinion, both of the explanations were possible. Either one could be true.
- 10 I recommend the Chinese restaurant in the middle of the town with its typical décor and great food.
- 11 It's time we upgrade our conference facilities; they're really dated.
- 12 The information should be given objectively, – I'd suggest using slides and limiting your comments to the facts

### 2 WORDPOWER *luck and chance*

Complete the sentences with the correct form of *chance* or *luck*.

- 1 The players need to do a lot more training to have a fighting chance of winning the game next month.
- 2 I get so nervous at job interviews. I'm always scared I'll blow my chance by saying something stupid.
- 3 I'm working overtime every evening at the moment. I count myself lucky that I don't have to work weekends too!
- 4 I haven't got any money to go on holiday. I need to win the lottery jackpot but I know I don't stand a chance!
- 5 The supermarket had a special offer on laptops today. They sold out fast but I was in good luck – I got the last one!

### REVIEW YOUR PROGRESS

Look again at Review your progress on p.126 of the Student's Book. How well can you do these things now?

3 = very well    2 = well    1 = not so well

#### I CAN ...

- |   |                          |
|---|--------------------------|
| give a presentation or a speech         | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| talk about superstitions and rituals    | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| take turns in more formal conversations | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| write a film review.                    | <input type="checkbox"/> |

# Vox pop video

## Unit 1: Language

### 1a What's your best second language?

a Watch video 1a and tick (✓) the correct answers.

- Nora has used Spanish \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a ☐ only for an exam  
 b ☐ on a holiday to Costa Rica  
 c ☒ for much of her life
- Nora says Arabic \_\_\_\_\_ than Spanish.  
 a ☐ is easier  
 b ☐ has more similar words  
 c ☐ has fewer similarities
- Jenna thinks French \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a ☐ has a lot in common with English  
 b ☐ has different grammar from English  
 c ☐ is just like English with a French accent
- Ruby thinks \_\_\_\_\_ French words are similar to English.  
 a ☐ all  
 b ☐ no  
 c ☐ many
- \_\_\_\_\_ started learning a second language at the oldest age.  
 a ☐ Nora  
 b ☐ Jenna  
 c ☐ Ruby
- Both \_\_\_\_\_ talk about false friends.  
 a ☐ Lauren and Ruby  
 b ☐ Nora and Ruby  
 c ☐ Nora and Lauren
- All the speakers say their second language \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a ☐ has difficult pronunciation  
 b ☐ is similar in some ways to English  
 c ☐ is easier to learn than English

### 1b How important is it to know a second language?

b Watch video 1b. Underline the correct words to complete the sentences.

- Nora has benefited in *one way* / many ways from speaking Spanish.
- Nora thinks that foreign language books and films give you *an opportunity to learn vocabulary* / *an understanding of people in other countries*.
- Jenna feels that when you travel abroad people often like *you to speak their language* / *to practise their English*.
- Ruby talks about the *pleasure* / *advantages* of speaking other languages.
- Ruby* / *Lauren* feels it's good to learn at least a few words to use when travelling abroad.
- All the speakers except *Jenna* / *Ruby* / *Lauren* mention the cultural benefits of knowing a language.



### 1c Do you enjoy learning other languages?

c Watch video 1c. Match the speakers 1–5 with their opinions a–e.

- ☒ Lauren
  - ☐ Ruby
  - ☐ All four speakers
  - ☐ Nora
  - ☐ Jenna
- I love learning languages so much I studied them at university.
  - I enjoy the feeling of achievement.
  - I'm likely to stop learning a language when it gets too hard.
  - The attitude to language learning in British schools is disappointing.
  - Learning languages can be difficult.

## Unit 2: Going to extremes

### 2a Do you agree that communication isn't about what you say but how you say it?

a Watch video 2a. Match 1–6 with a–f to make sentences.

- ☒ Monika feels
  - ☐ Monika thinks
  - ☐ Laurence and Jenny think
  - ☐ Adelaide says
  - ☐ Adelaide and Jenny both say
  - ☐ Jenny probably feels
- it is easy to be misunderstood.
  - modern technology can lead to misunderstandings.
  - the way people from her country communicate is different.
  - she has been misunderstood at work.
  - the way you sound has a large impact on meaning.
  - she doesn't use her hands very much when communicating.



## 2b Do you agree that good listeners make good leaders?

b Watch video 2b and tick (✓) the correct answers.

- Monika thinks there are other important \_\_\_\_\_ a leader needs to have.
  - ☒ qualities
  - ☐ ideas
  - ☐ qualifications
- Graham and Adelaide agree that leaders need to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - ☐ consider what people say
  - ☐ hold people's attention
  - ☐ do what they think is right
- According to Laurence, a good listener is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - ☐ a good leader
  - ☐ not necessarily a good leader
  - ☐ never a good leader
- In Adelaide's opinion a leader who doesn't listen will probably \_\_\_\_\_.
  - ☐ be a success
  - ☐ not be successful
  - ☐ do what the people want
- Jenny thinks that for leaders to make the right decisions they have to \_\_\_\_\_ different points of view.
  - ☐ ignore
  - ☐ understand
  - ☐ have

## 2c Do you agree that people who talk a lot often have the least of value to say?

c Watch video 2c. Underline the correct names to complete the sentences.

- Graham / Jenny finds some talkative people interesting.
- Graham / Jenny uses a saying in giving an opinion.
- Adelaide / Graham feels some people don't like silence.
- Like Jenny, Adelaide / Laurence doesn't fully agree with the question.
- Graham / Laurence uses an ex-colleague as an example.

## Unit 3: Travel and adventure

### 3a Do you enjoy travelling?

a Watch video 3a. Underline the correct names to complete the sentences.

- Ruby mentions *one main reason* / several reasons she enjoys travelling.
- Lauren loves travelling when *she is alone* / *she has free time*.
- Only Lauren mentions activities *in the town* / *in the countryside*.
- Jenna *likes the challenge of* / *doesn't enjoy* speaking other languages.
- Nora would probably enjoy a holiday in a *cold* / *hot* country.
- Nora and Jenna both talk about enjoying *galleries* / *buildings*.
- All the interviewees mention *meeting people* / *food and cooking*.

## 3b What's the most adventurous trip you've ever been on?

b Watch video 3b and tick (✓) the correct answers.

- In Iceland, Ruby \_\_\_\_\_.
  - ☐ stayed in one place
  - ☒ did a lot of travelling
  - ☐ hitchhiked
- What she enjoyed most was \_\_\_\_\_.
  - ☐ the weather
  - ☐ the wildlife
  - ☐ the scenery
- Ruby's trip was \_\_\_\_\_.
  - ☐ frightening
  - ☐ active
  - ☐ relaxing
- Jenna took her trip because \_\_\_\_\_.
  - ☐ she needed a change
  - ☐ she had some free time
  - ☐ she wanted to spend time with friends
- You get the impression that Jenna's trip was \_\_\_\_\_.
  - ☐ carefully planned
  - ☐ spontaneous
  - ☐ booked well in advance
- Jenna doesn't mention travelling by \_\_\_\_\_.
  - ☐ car
  - ☐ boat
  - ☐ bus
- Jenna says she went to many different countries and \_\_\_\_\_.
  - ☐ ate lots of food
  - ☐ made lots of friends
  - ☐ saw lots of films
- Jenna feels it was adventurous because she \_\_\_\_\_.
  - ☐ went to lots of places
  - ☐ went white water rafting
  - ☐ didn't go with anyone

## 3c What's the most beautiful place you've ever travelled to?

c Watch video 3c. Match 1–7 with a–g to make sentences.

- ☒ Ruby remembers
  - ☐ Lauren describes
  - ☐ Jenna talks about
  - ☐ Nora describes
  - ☐ Both Lauren and Nora describe
  - ☐ Nora didn't enjoy
  - ☐ Everybody except Jenna talks about
- very similar beaches.
  - sharing the beach.
  - walking to the beach.
  - the colour of the sea.
  - the brilliant pictures she took.
  - how the place was like heaven.
  - the colours and the heat.

## Unit 4: Consciousness

### 4a When do the best ideas come to you?

a Watch video 4a. Match 1–7 with a–g to make sentences.

- 1 ☒ a Adelaide has good ideas
- 2 ☐ b Adelaide also has good ideas
- 3 ☐ c Alex has a lot of ideas
- 4 ☐ d Caroline has a lot of ideas
- 5 ☐ e Adam has ideas
- 6 ☐ f Two of the speakers have ideas
- 7 ☐ g Three of the speakers have ideas

- a late at night.
- b while trying to study.
- c in the shower.
- d in the kitchen.
- e when it's not convenient.
- f when there's no one else there.
- g in the car.

### 4b What do you think is meant by a 'sixth sense'?

b Watch video 4b and tick (✓) the correct answers.

- 1 Adelaide thinks a sixth sense is always felt \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a ☐ as something happens
  - b ☒ before something happens
  - c ☐ after something has happened
- 2 Adelaide doesn't have a sixth sense but she knows someone who \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a ☐ might have it
  - b ☐ used to have it
  - c ☐ does have it
- 3 Adelaide's sister's boyfriend predicted the incident \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a ☐ in her aunt's car
  - b ☐ after being asleep
  - c ☐ two hours before
- 4 Alex feels you cannot \_\_\_\_\_ a sixth sense.
  - a ☐ define
  - b ☐ have
  - c ☐ acquire
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ have similar definitions of a sixth sense.
  - a ☐ Adam and Adelaide
  - b ☐ Alex and Adam
  - c ☐ Adelaide and Alex
- 6 Only \_\_\_\_\_ gives a concrete example of someone's sixth sense.
  - a ☐ Adam
  - b ☐ Alex
  - c ☐ Adelaide
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ they have a sixth sense.
  - a ☐ One of the speakers thinks
  - b ☐ None of the speakers think
  - c ☐ Some of the speakers think

### 4c Do you think it's a good idea to trust your instinct?

c Watch video 4c. Underline the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 Adelaide has changed her mind / kept the same views about following her instinct since she was young.
- 2 Adelaide has never / sometimes accepted job offers against her instinct.
- 3 Alex believes that his initial / considered thoughts are usually right.
- 4 Alex feels you should / shouldn't think too much about other people's views.
- 5 Caroline believes that you can sense danger in an instinctive / a calculated way.
- 6 All three speakers seem wary / in favour of following their gut reaction.

## Unit 5: Fairness

### 5a Which kinds of jobs have the best employment conditions?

a Watch video 5a and tick (✓) the correct answers.

- 1 Anna says that people who work \_\_\_\_\_ probably have the worst working conditions.
  - a ☒ with their hands
  - b ☐ in hospitals
  - c ☐ in offices
- 2 Anna probably wouldn't enjoy working \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a ☐ in a hospital
  - b ☐ outside in winter
  - c ☐ in an office
- 3 Valentina thinks \_\_\_\_\_ have difficult working conditions.
  - a ☐ office workers
  - b ☐ admin staff
  - c ☐ soldiers
- 4 According to Rachel, a \_\_\_\_\_ would be a good place to work.
  - a ☐ local government office
  - b ☐ restaurant
  - c ☐ local business
- 5 Matt thinks teachers have \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a ☐ long careers
  - b ☐ good pay
  - c ☐ job satisfaction
- 6 At the sandwich shop, Matt's hours were \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a ☐ long
  - b ☐ uncertain
  - c ☐ horrible

**5b** How easy is it for people entering your field of work to find a good job?

- b** Watch video 5b. Underline the correct words to complete the sentences.
- 1 Anna says most people start a career in her field at a low level / with some experience.
  - 2 Anna says that in publishing today, certain people / anybody can start at a higher level.
  - 3 According to Rachel, the number of applicants for a teaching job often depends on the salary / location.
  - 4 Rachel thinks workplace training / academic qualifications can be more useful in finding a job these days.
  - 5 Rachel and Matt both think there are not enough jobs / lots of jobs for young people these days.
  - 6 Matt thinks schools in England do enough / could do more to prepare young people for work.

**5c** If you ran a business, would it be important that your employees enjoyed working there?

- c** Watch video 5c. Underline the correct words to complete the sentences.
- 1 Anna / Rachel says the boss's door should always be open.
  - 2 Rachel / Stuart says what you get out of a job should equal what you put in.
  - 3 Stuart and Anna / Rachel believe that teamwork is important.
  - 4 Anna / Stuart says staff should only be asked to do tasks they are capable of carrying out.
  - 5 Rachel / Stuart says it is important that staff know their voices will be heard.
  - 6 Everyone / No one says satisfied employees are likely to do a better job.

## Unit 6: Perspectives

**6a** Do you take a lot of photos?

- a** Watch video 6a. Underline the correct words to complete the sentences.
- 1 Gill plans to take more photos / organise her photos when she stops working.
  - 2 Gill and her husband agree / disagree on the best way to store pictures.
  - 3 David is unlikely to take photos at home / on holiday.
  - 4 David says he often shares / deletes the photos on his phone.
  - 5 Rose doesn't always remember to take / to save photos.
  - 6 Rose would probably not like / like to print the photos on her computer.
  - 7 Gill and Elizabeth are both married to keen photographers / owners of new cameras.
  - 8 Elizabeth likes to share her photos all the time / on special occasions.

**6b** Are there any professional photos on your walls at home?

- b** Watch video 6b. Match the speakers 1–5 with their opinions a–e.
- 1 ☒ d Gill
  - 2 ☐ David
  - 3 ☐ Rose
  - 4 ☐ Elizabeth
  - 5 ☐ Emma
- a Our family photos are a bit unusual.
  - b The photos on our walls are there for motivation.
  - c I like to put up my own photos of friends and family.
  - d I wanted a photo of the whole family before someone left.
  - e I haven't had time to put up any photos.

**6c** What's your favourite picture of yourself or someone in your family?

- c** Watch video 6c and tick (✓) the correct answers.
- 1 Gill thinks photos should \_\_\_\_\_.
    - a ☐ take up wall space
    - b ☒ remind us of the past
    - c ☐ be of children
  - 2 David likes photos of himself when he has \_\_\_\_\_.
    - a ☐ achieved something
    - b ☐ won something
    - c ☐ changed
  - 3 David's family \_\_\_\_\_.
    - a ☐ often see each other
    - b ☐ meet up on special occasions
    - c ☐ live together
  - 4 Rose likes the photo of her grandmother because it \_\_\_\_\_.
    - a ☐ resembles her
    - b ☐ brings back memories
    - c ☐ is old
  - 5 When they were younger, Elizabeth's sons \_\_\_\_\_.
    - a ☐ were very funny
    - b ☐ played together
    - c ☐ were not very close
  - 6 Elizabeth likes the photo because it is a reminder of how her boys \_\_\_\_\_.
    - a ☐ used to be alike
    - b ☐ used to look
    - c ☐ used to act





## Unit 7: Connections

**7a** If you had to live in an unfamiliar country, where you didn't speak the language, what problems might you encounter?

**a** Watch video 7a and tick (✓) the correct answers.

- Jenny describes a time she found it difficult to \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a ☒ ask for something  
 b ☐ find a supermarket  
 c ☐ do the recycling
- Jenny's attempts to communicate \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a ☐ were unsuccessful  
 b ☐ attracted attention  
 c ☐ caused confusion
- Monika doesn't mention the difficulties of \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a ☐ meeting people  
 b ☐ using public transport  
 c ☐ getting a job
- Monika suggests \_\_\_\_\_ might be helpful.  
 a ☐ online research  
 b ☐ making friends  
 c ☐ being a tourist
- According to Laurence, it would probably be harder to settle in a foreign country if you were \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a ☐ quiet  
 b ☐ talkative  
 c ☐ confident
- \_\_\_\_\_ have personal experience to base their answers on.  
 a ☐ Laurence and Monika  
 b ☐ Laurence and Jenny  
 c ☐ All three

**7b** If you started a job in a small company where everyone knew each other, what problems might you encounter?

**b** Watch video 7b. Underline the correct words to complete the sentences.

- Adelaide thinks it's difficult at first because groups of friends already exist / *nobody makes an effort*.
- Adelaide wouldn't recommend *waiting* / trying to make friends.
- Laurence feels people might be talking about you *secretly* / openly at first.
- Laurence suggests that you should *try different things* / stick to your own job.
- All three speakers recommend trying to be *professional* / sociable.
- All three speakers talk about the current staff often being *outward* / inward looking.

**7c** If you met someone online and wanted to get to know them better, what problems might you encounter?

**c** Watch video 7c. Match the speakers 1–5 with their opinions a–e.

- ☒ Adelaide says how easy it is
- ☐ Adelaide recommends
- ☐ Jenny dislikes
- ☐ Monika suggests
- ☐ Most of them have concerns about
  - meeting online contacts face to face.
  - having a video conversation before agreeing to meet.
  - informing other people about the time and the place of your meeting.
  - chatting to people online.
  - pretending to be someone else online.

## Unit 8: Body and health

**8a** Do you think people will live for longer in the future?

**a** Watch video 8a. Underline the correct words to complete the sentences.

- According to Stuart, our diet these days has more / *less* nutritional value.
- Stuart feels people nowadays *know* / don't know a lot about what is good and bad for our health.
- Valentina agrees / *disagrees* with the others.
- Valentina says that pollution / *medicine* is an important factor in life expectancy.
- Anna thinks that many people will need / *won't need* to change their lifestyle if they want to live longer.
- Both Anna and Stuart think that we will have more chance of *recovering from* / getting serious diseases.

**8b** Do you know anyone who's ever followed a diet?

**b** Watch video 8b and tick (✓) the correct answers.

- Some of Stuart's friends diet to improve their \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a ☐ lifestyle  
 b ☐ weight  
 c ☒ performance
- Rachel recommends trying to \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a ☐ eat sensibly  
 b ☐ lose weight quickly  
 c ☐ cut out certain foods
- Matt's diet failed because he \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a ☐ didn't know what to cook  
 b ☐ didn't like the recipes  
 c ☐ didn't have enough determination
- None of Valentina's friends have \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a ☐ been on diets  
 b ☐ lost weight permanently  
 c ☐ put on weight
- Anna's friends have had \_\_\_\_\_ results from diets.  
 a ☐ negative  
 b ☐ positive  
 c ☐ varied



### 8c What treat would you find most difficult to cut out of your diet?

c Watch video 8c. Match the speakers 1–5 with their opinions a–e.

- 1 ☒ c Stuart
  - 2 ☐ Rachel
  - 3 ☐ Anna and Valentina
  - 4 ☐ Valentina
  - 5 ☐ All the speakers
- a I love chocolatey treats.
  - b I would hate to cut out sweet treats.
  - c I have a weakness for doughnuts.
  - d I would not want to cut down on desserts.
  - e I love eating cookies.

## Unit 9: Cities

### 9a Has the area you live in changed much in recent years?

a Watch video 9a. Underline the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 Alex feels his home town has more places to eat / independent shops than it used to.
- 2 According to Alex, the town has been developed for the benefit of locals / visitors.
- 3 Adam contradicts himself / exaggerates slightly.
- 4 In Adelaide's home town the population has probably decreased / increased.
- 5 Adelaide feels the changes have improved / worsened the town.
- 6 Of all the speakers, Adam / Alex is the most critical of the changes in his home town.

### 9b Are there parts of the town where you live that need redeveloping or regenerating?

b Watch video 9b and tick (✓) the correct answers.

- 1 Alex argues that improving the outskirts of the town would create \_\_\_\_\_.  
a ☐ friction  
b ☐ controversy  
c ☒ a positive feeling
- 2 Alex thinks that his local council needs to give more consideration to its \_\_\_\_\_.  
a ☐ residents  
b ☐ town centre  
c ☐ tourists
- 3 Like many tourist destinations, Alex thinks there is \_\_\_\_\_ felt with regard to visitors in Stratford.  
a ☐ hate  
b ☐ pride  
c ☐ tension
- 4 Alex thinks that the towns need to make some \_\_\_\_\_ improvements.  
a ☐ sensible  
b ☐ major  
c ☐ radical
- 5 Adam makes \_\_\_\_\_ about how his town looks.  
a ☐ one main point  
b ☐ lots of suggestions  
c ☐ a couple of comments
- 6 Caroline thinks that every part of \_\_\_\_\_ needs some improvement.  
a ☐ her town  
b ☐ her region  
c ☐ the UK
- 7 Caroline is not critical of \_\_\_\_\_ in Wales.  
a ☐ government spending  
b ☐ public transport  
c ☐ the number of cars on the roads

### 9c If you had a lot of money, what kind of house would you like to live in?

c Watch video 9c. Match 1–5 with a–e to make sentences.

- 1 ☒ a Alex probably wouldn't be happy in
  - 2 ☐ Caroline would be happy with
  - 3 ☐ Adam would like
  - 4 ☐ Adelaide would like
  - 5 ☐ Adelaide and Caroline would both like
- a a modern house.
  - b a house with lots of natural light.
  - c to live somewhere unspoiled.
  - d a house with plenty of facilities.
  - e a small house.

## Unit 10: Occasions

**10a** Do you know of any objects that traditionally bring good luck or ward off evil?

**a** Watch video 10a. Match 1–5 with a–e to make sentences.

- 1 ☒ Gill mentions
  - 2 ☐ David is uncertain about why
  - 3 ☐ Rose says that in her country
  - 4 ☐ Only Emma mentions
  - 5 ☐ Elizabeth mentions
- a jewellery.
  - b a rabbit's foot is considered lucky.
  - c a kitchen ingredient.
  - d a plant and an animal.
  - e certain creatures are considered lucky.

**10b** What place do you think superstitions have in today's society?

**b** Watch video 10b. Underline the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 Gill probably feels that previous generations were more / less superstitious.
- 2 According to David, we are less superstitious nowadays because we know why things happen / don't need luck.
- 3 Rose feels that views on superstition differ depending on how wealthy / old you are.
- 4 Emma would be more likely to consult an expert / wear a charm if she had a problem.
- 5 Only Rose considers the question from a personal / global point of view.
- 6 David and Emma have quite different / similar views.

**10c** Would you describe yourself as a superstitious person?

**c** Watch video 10c and tick (✓) the correct answers.

- 1 Gill suggests that luck is something \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a ☒ we can control
  - b ☐ we need
  - c ☐ we don't understand
- 2 David thinks that what happens in life occurs because of \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a ☐ luck
  - b ☐ your own decisions
  - c ☐ a combination of both
- 3 Rose is \_\_\_\_\_ her opinion.
  - a ☐ certain of
  - b ☐ unsure about
  - c ☐ hesitant about giving
- 4 If she had been born somewhere else, Emma \_\_\_\_\_ have been more superstitious.
  - a ☐ would definitely
  - b ☐ would definitely not be
  - c ☐ might

- 5 None of the speakers are superstitious \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a ☐ any more
  - b ☐ in front of others
  - c ☐ in the slightest
- 6 Both \_\_\_\_\_ use a similar saying about luck.
  - a ☐ Gill and Emma
  - b ☐ Rose and Gill
  - c ☐ David and Rose





# Audioscripts

## Unit 1

### 1.1

**ROBERT** Thank you for coming, Emilie.

**EMILIE** My pleasure.

**R** So how long have you been living in New Zealand?

**E** By December, I'll have been here for a year.

**R** Have you ever had a job in the hotel **E** Yes, I have. I worked in a hotel in Geneva for two years before I moved here.

**R** So why did you apply for this particular post?

**E** As soon as I saw it, I thought it was the right job for me.

**R** What do you like about it?

**E** I've always enjoyed working with people and being customer-facing so this position seems ideal.

**R** This isn't your first application, is it?

**E** No, this is the second time I've applied. The first time my English wasn't good enough.

**R** It sounds good now.

**E** It has got a lot better. I'd only just arrived the last time I applied.

**R** Do you have any questions?

**E** When will I know if I've been successful?

**R** We'll have made our decision by the end of next week. Ten days at the most.

**E** That's fine. I'll wait to hear from you.

### 1.2

1 The team had been training for three months already when the season started.

2 By September, I will have been studying Arabic for three years.

3 This is the fourth time I have tried to learn ballroom dancing.

4 They have been practising this piece on the piano for about three months now.

5 By the time I got to rehearsal, the actors had been working for about an hour.

6 She has been revising for this exam since early this morning.

### 1.3

**TIM** Thanks for helping me with this, Harry. I really appreciate it.

**HARRY** No problem, Tim.

**T** This is sort of my first report and I want to get it right.

**H** Sure. I still remember my first one.

**T** You've done loads of them since then, I suppose. How long have you been here?

**H** Twenty years. Give or take a couple.

**T** So you've done a lot of reports?

**H** Quite a few.

**T** Hundreds I expect. So who should I copy my report to?

**H** Whatsisname in Finance and probably that other guy.

**T** Who?

**H** Thingy. The tall guy. He's something to do with sales. It'll come back to me. Next question?

**T** How long should the report be?

**H** Not too long.

**T** Quite short then? Good.

**H** But not too short. Somewhere in the region of three or four pages.

**T** That's not too hard then. Three to four pages. Plus a cover page. What should I call it?

**H** *The future of the company*. Or words to that effect.

**T** Brilliant idea. Final question. Can I buy you lunch?

**H** Of course you can. What's the budget?

**T** About a tenner? Will that be enough?

**H** I suppose it will have to be. Let's go.

### 1.4

1 It's a good career.

2 I prefer the green one.

3 Let's have fruit instead.

4 I never wear a tie.

5 People don't earn much here.

6 Shall we have a break?

7 I don't believe it.

8 I can't bear it.

9 I'm going to the pier.

10 What did you learn?

11 He's a great player.

12 Bread, anyone?

### 1.5

**DAVID** So, Julia, what do you do for a living?

**JULIA** Well, David ... I'm a lexicographer. I write dictionaries.

**D** What an unusual job! Lexicographer, did you say? To be honest, I didn't realise that anyone did that these days. I don't mean to be rude, but don't we already have enough dictionaries?

**J** Well the thing is, language is constantly changing. For a start, there are loads of new words coming into the language all the time. We could easily add a couple of hundred words to a big dictionary every year.

**D** Oh my gosh, really? What sort of thing?

**J** 'Selfie' is a really good example. It's hard to believe that just a few years ago nobody knew that word.

**D** Yes, that's true! But I think I rather disapprove of words like that; they seem so trivial, they don't deserve a place in the dictionary. Maybe that's because I don't like the concept of selfies much; you have to be pretty vain to think that other people are interested in photos of you.

**J** You've got a point, but we're trained not to think like that. We don't pass judgment on the language; we just record it. And we couldn't disallow 'selfie' just because we don't like people taking them!

**D** Well what about all those ridiculous adaptations – what did I hear? – 'gelfie' for a gym selfie, or 'helfie' for a selfie of someone's hair. Surely you wouldn't have them in?

**J** It depends. Quite a lot of words do prove to be rather ephemeral, and we have to take them back out of the dictionary in the next edition. That's particularly true of anything involving technology, where ongoing change means that some words barely have time to be invented before they're on their way out again – just like the things they describe!

**D** OK, I get it that technology produces lots of new words, but what else?

**J** Fashion is one.

**D** Because it changes all the time?

**J** That's right. And it seems to produce an endless stream of what we call portmanteau words. That's where two words are stuck together to make one. Things like 'coatigan'; a cross between a coat and a cardigan, or 'jeggings'; leggings that look like jeans.

**D** Oh, yes! I bought a 'cronut' for breakfast yesterday; it was a mixture of a croissant and a doughnut – that must be the same phenomenon!

**J** Exactly. And in fact food is another fertile area for us lexicographers. We're always finding new things to eat.

**D** Well that may be true, but I definitely don't want to see 'cronut' in the dictionary!

## Unit 2

### 2.1

I recently experienced one of the most silent nights of my life. I was visiting friends in Riyadh and they suggested going out to the desert. We left the city at dusk and the further we went, the darker it got. After about two hours, we arrived at the camp and pitched our tent. It was considerably colder than I had expected but the view was stunning. All I could hear was my own breathing as I looked at the most amazing sky. The stars were much clearer and more numerous than I had ever experienced. That night, I definitely felt significantly more aware of the size of the universe.

### 2.2

**A** So, tell me all. How was the big meeting?

**B** It was a bit more relaxed than I'd expected.

**A** So did you manage to fit in with all those important people?

**B** I guess so. I hope I came across well – there were a number of people I could relate to.

**A** How was the 'Big Boss'?

**B** He was OK. When I first got there, he bombarded me with questions about our current project. Overall, I think I did quite well, actually. Mind you, my thoughts on the manager nearly slipped out.

**A** I hope you held yourself back.

**B** Of course I did. Some of the discussions brought out the worst in some of the participants. One man went on and on about the budget. It was as if he was the only one affected. Anyway, the whole thing was fine. It was a great day and I learned lots.

**A** Well done. You obviously handled the whole thing very professionally.

### 2.3

1 It was a bit more relaxed than I'd expected.

2 So did you manage to fit in with all those important people?

3 Overall, I think I did quite well actually.

4 One man went on and on about the budget.

5 It was a great day and I learned lots.

### 2.4

1 As part of the training, the civilians learned to march.

2 After the injury, he limped off the pitch.

3 He didn't just walk, he strolled.

4 Suddenly the boat started drifting.

5 I was in a hurry so I rushed.

6 The car zoomed past at great speed.

### 2.5

**MARCO** What's the problem, Luisa?

**LUISA** Nothing major. Well, actually ... Don't you dare tell anyone, but I'm thinking of leaving.

**M** You? Quitting? Why?

**L** My job is quite dull and the manager doesn't seem to realise I'm bored.

**M** Have you told him?

**L** Indirectly. I've dropped lots of hints.

**M** Yes, but there's a lot to be said for being upfront. You need to tell him directly.

**L** He won't listen.

**M** It might even be in your interests to go above him and talk to his manager? It's high time you sorted this problem out.

**L** I don't think I could do that, Marco. That's not really my style. I just need a new challenge and I don't think I'm going to get it here and that's that.

**M** Don't get so defensive about it. Why don't you speak to HR?

**L** There's no point.

**M** I disagree. You might want to try this. Have you thought about the possibility of asking for a secondment or even a sabbatical?

**L** A sabbatical? That's not a bad idea. OK, I'll give it some thought.

▶ **2.6**

- 1 **A** Don't you dare tell anyone.  
**B** Don't worry. My lips are sealed.
- 2 **A** Why don't you come with me?  
**B** I am sure you'll be fine on your own.
- 3 **A** There's a lot to be said for cycling to work.  
**B** I agree. Cheaper and healthier.
- 4 **A** You might want to read this.  
**B** Really? What's it about?
- 5 **A** It's about time you went home.  
**B** I will as soon as I've finished this.
- 6 **A** You might as well cancel the meeting.  
**B** Why? How many can't come?

▶ **2.7**

- 1 **A** Did the manager email the supplier last week?  
**B** No, she telephoned them last week.
- 2 **A** Did the manager email the supplier last week?  
**B** No, she emailed them last month.
- 3 **A** Did all the participants speak English during the meeting?  
**B** No, everyone spoke German during the meeting.
- 4 **A** Did all the participants speak English during the meeting?  
**B** No, but the presenters spoke English.
- 5 **A** Will you be going to Italy on holiday again this year?  
**B** No, but I'll be going there for work.
- 6 **A** Will you be going to Italy on holiday again this year?  
**B** No, I think we'll be going to Greece.
- 7 **A** Are you flying to the meeting in Paris next week?  
**B** No, I think I'll be driving there.
- 8 **A** So you are doing a presentation in Berlin?  
**B** No, I'm doing a workshop in Berlin.

▶ **2.8**

- CARLA** Rakesh! I haven't seen you for ages! How are you doing?
- RAKESH** Oh hi, Carla. Not that great, actually.
- C** Oh? What's up, if you don't mind me asking?
- R** Well, this is probably going to sound really stupid to you, but I seem to have lost my sense of smell. And I know it sounds really trivial, but it's driving me crazy. For one thing, I can't really taste things properly any more, and you know how I love my food!
- C** I thought you said you'd lost your sense of smell, not taste.
- R** Yeah, but apparently about 80% of the taste of food comes from the smell. Your taste buds can only detect a few flavours. My girlfriend's getting fed up with me going on about it, but she doesn't understand. Eating's just a function for me now, and it should be one of life's great pleasures!
- C** No, I totally get it. My uncle had the same thing after he had a stroke. We all thought he'd recovered apart from having a slight limp, but he seemed to cut himself off from the rest of the family, and when my mum spoke to him, he said that was the reason. He still finds it really frustrating, not being able to experience things everyone else can, like the smell of flowers, or food cooking on the barbecue.
- R** Yes, you just take all these things for granted before it happens to you.
- C** And it can be dangerous too. I hope you've checked all your smoke alarms!
- R** Yes, my doctor gave me a leaflet about all the precautions I need to take, like installing a gas detector and remembering to look at all the use-by dates on food, because I have no other way of knowing if it's gone off.
- C** What a pain! So what's caused it? You haven't had a head injury, have you?
- R** No, thank goodness. My doctor isn't sure, but I'm due to see a specialist at the hospital next week and hopefully he'll be able to diagnose the underlying cause. Apparently there are two basic possibilities: either something is stopping the odours from reaching the top of my nose, or something is interfering with the nerve signals between the brain and the nose.

- C** Well, I hope he gets to the bottom of it for you.
- R** Thanks. And one good thing to come out of it is at least that I'm definitely going to give up smoking now. I don't think it's the whole reason for what's happened, but it certainly doesn't help.
- C** That's great. Best of luck with it!

## Unit 3

▶ **3.1**

- A** How would you describe your early life?
- B** Well, life was pretty tough. There was a lot of financial hardship.
- A** Where were you brought up?
- B** In a rather deprived area with poor housing and not many amenities.
- A** Were you very poor?
- B** No, not really. We weren't exactly impoverished. We were never rich but never destitute either. We had just enough money to live on and were careful to live within our means.
- A** Now that you've become rich and have a large disposable income, how has your life changed?
- B** Well, obviously I don't have to worry about making ends meet. We live in a nice house in an affluent area.
- A** And are you happier?
- B** A good question. I would say my life is pretty comfortable now but prosperity doesn't always necessarily bring you happiness.

▶ **3.2**

neighbouring  
charity  
poverty  
destitute  
relatives  
enrolment  
everyone  
volunteer  
requirement  
improvement  
nutritious

▶ **3.3**

In late 2008, Oliver Broom was working in London. Having graduated a few years before, he was earning a good salary and to all intents and purposes had a bright future, but Oli had other things on his mind. A good friend had been seriously injured swimming on holiday some time before and this had made him question what he was doing with his life. On top of that, he had just split up with his girlfriend and he realised that if he was going to do something different with his life, then the time was ripe.

One of his hobbies was cricket – playing it and watching it – and he suddenly had the craziest of ideas and decided he would cycle to Australia in time to see England play their next match against Australia which was set to take place two years hence. He worked out a possible route which would take him through over twenty countries ending with a sea-crossing from Indonesia to North Australia before the final leg from Darwin to Brisbane which was going to be another 5,000 kilometres.

He said he would spend the first few months in Europe pedalling through France and Germany down to the Danube which he planned to follow as far as possible. "It will be getting cold by then, so I'll pedal on towards Istanbul and the gateway to Asia," he predicted as he set off in October 2009.

Things didn't quite work out as planned and by the time he arrived in Thailand he had already had to make major changes to his schedule due to the weather, war and various other factors. No sooner had he arrived in Thailand, than he was suddenly struck down with Dengue fever and was hospitalised, leaving him unsure if he would be able to carry on or not. Luckily, he managed to recover and caught his ship to Australia on time and completed the journey across the outback to Brisbane. With remarkable timing, Oli cycled into Brisbane the very day the cricket match was to start.

▶ **3.4**

Your brother's got amazing hair!  
I've got four exams tomorrow.  
That's the biggest egg I've ever seen!  
I can't find my keys!  
What a great dinner – it looks delicious.  
Look at his car – it's so dirty.  
I can't ask him to help me again – he's done enough already.  
My husband's great in a crisis. He always knows what to do.  
That's the biggest fish I've ever seen!  
My husband's a great cook.

▶ **3.5**

- NILS** Hi Dario. So what's this news you wanted to tell me?
- DARIO** Well, it really is quite exciting. Basically, I have decided not to start work just yet.
- N** Not work? But I thought you had a job offer?
- D** I have but, you know, we've only just graduated and I've been studying, taking exams, revising and so on for years. In a nutshell, I fancy doing something different and going somewhere new.
- N** In other words, you're going travelling again.
- D** But not just for pleasure. I did some reading, talked to some people, did some desk research, sent off some emails and, to cut a long story short, I'm off to Uganda.
- N** Wow! Africa. To do what?
- D** Well, I wanted to do something meaningful, you know, help others. Give something back.
- N** Not like people like me then!
- D** No, what I meant was that for me it's important to test myself a bit. Get out of the comfort zone. So I'm going to help build a primary school.
- N** A school? That will be amazing! You out in the African heat and me at my hot desk at the bank. That just about sums it up. So when are you off?
- D** In two weeks. Can't wait. So much to do.
- N** Can I just say ... How shall I put this? I'm very proud.

▶ **3.6**

just graduated  
difficult to explain  
desk research  
somewhere new  
something meaningful  
the young should support  
not just for pleasure  
vegetables probably

▶ **3.7**

- GEMMA** We've been learning about explorers at school, and I really want to be one!
- MUM** Really? I must say, all that hacking through dense jungle and trekking across arid deserts never appealed to me.
- G** Oh, Mum, where's your sense of adventure? These people have a place in history!
- M** Like Marco Polo and Christopher Columbus, you mean?
- G** Well yeah, but more modern people too. And plenty of women. There were some fantastic ones around the end of the nineteenth, beginning of the twentieth century; I wish I'd been born then, when travelling was still so exciting and romantic! Like Gertrude Bell, for instance. She was a real intellectual. She had pots of money, and she travelled around and she learned how to speak Arabic and Persian and goodness knows what else. She wasn't just a tourist though. She ended up having an immense amount of power and playing a major role in establishing Iraq. The modern state, that is.
- M** I feel exhausted just thinking about it.
- G** Oh, Mum! Well what about Amelia Earhart? She was such a pioneer; the first female aviator to fly solo over the Atlantic.
- M** But she died really young, didn't she? Went missing in the Pacific if I remember correctly. It's all very well being adventurous, but if you die in the process...

- G** But people still remember her now; that counts for something, doesn't it? And not only did she break all those records herself, but she also inspired so many other women and made them believe they could do things just like men.
- M** Yes well, you can do what you like if you have plenty of money, but you're going to have to live within your means.
- G** I know that. But there are plenty of examples of people whose job gives them adventure. Like, have you heard of Martha Gellhorn? She actually started off travelling around America interviewing people made destitute by the Great Depression, but she ended up being one of the greatest war correspondents of the twentieth century, reporting on almost every major conflict in the 60 years she was working.
- M** But is there actually anywhere left to explore these days?
- G** Yes, lots of places, obviously!
- M** What do you mean?
- G** Space, of course! Valentina Tereshkova was the first woman in space, but there are still plenty of challenges, and ones we're probably going to have to face if we carry on trashing the planet the way we're doing now. Perhaps I'll be one of the first people to go to Mars. That would be so cool. There's only one problem with that, though.
- M** What's that?
- G** Well you can get there, but currently there's no way of coming home again.
- M** Oh, Gemma!

## Unit 4

### 4.1

- I remember when I was very young.
- We always went on holiday to France.
- In the evening we would walk along the beach.
- My brothers put me in a rowing boat.
- I still have my photo album to jog my memory.

### 4.2

- A** What did you think of the presentation?
- B** No offence intended but I found it dull.
- A** I think I see where you're coming from but I beg to differ.
- B** So you found it interesting?
- A** Well, not exactly interesting, but dull is a little harsh.
- B** With all due respect, it's much better to be frank. It was boring.
- A** OK, I take your point. It wasn't that interesting but we need to be more supportive.
- B** I disagree. In fact, if you don't mind me saying so, he needs to be told.
- A** I'll leave that to you then. You're his manager!

### 4.3

- I have eight brothers.
- When I was a child, I was only allowed to eat sweets once a week.
- My mother dyed the sheets blue.
- I had to brake very late to avoid an accident.
- I eat out at least three times a week.
- My sister arrived right on cue, just as someone mentioned her name.
- The strong winds blew the parasols over.
- The police are still looking for a serial killer.

### 4.4

**LEILA** A really embarrassing thing happened to me last week, Hannah. I was in this museum in York, and they had lots of rooms decorated in the styles of different decades, and we came to this one from the 1950s and I just burst into tears because it was my Grandmother's sitting room, right there in the museum!

**HANNAH** What, her actual furniture and stuff?

**L** No, I just mean that it was so similar. Although, to be honest, I only have a pretty vague memory of her sitting room; she died when I was twelve. Whether it was the wallpaper or the furniture, I'm not sure, but there was something there that

triggered these really strong memories. I felt like I could almost smell it; her house always had a very distinctive smell of perfume and baking bread; and I could remember the taste of this particular kind of cake she used to get delivered when we came to visit.

**H** That's really moving, Leila. It's so weird how that kind of thing can happen, isn't it? I get it with music sometimes. Some song you hear on the radio brings back vivid memories of a time in your past.

**L** Yes, I saw a programme on TV about using music with people who have memory problems and they were talking about how we have different kinds of memory.

**H** Yes, I saw that too – fascinating!

**L** I think they said there's 'explicit' memory, where we're actually trying to remember things like information for an exam, and then there's 'implicit' memory, which is all the stuff we don't make a conscious effort to remember. Didn't the programme say that they get stored in different parts of the brain, and the bit that stores implicit memories is a lot more robust? So even for someone who has almost completely lost touch with reality, music can still re-awaken distant memories.

**H** That's right! That old man with Alzheimer's disease who'd been totally uncommunicative for months started singing and dancing, didn't he?

**L** Yes, it was so moving! But I've never quite understood why silly little pop songs can have such a powerful effect. I can't believe some of the rubbish that brings a tear to my eye!

**H** Well, even if the songs themselves are totally worthless, they still have that association with memories that we really treasure. For me, they're mostly connected to when I was younger; things like travelling in Australia or being at college. I did listen to classical music then too, but it's just a bit too abstract somehow to have the same effect.

**L** Yes, and pop music is more of a shared experience. In fact, do you remember how that programme showed them using particular songs to try to connect the patients with their visitors? It made me think what song I'd use to remember my husband.

**H** And did you decide?

**L** Yes, it would have to be Barry White's 'You're the first, the last, my everything'. We played that at our wedding.

## Unit 5

### 5.1

- comparison
- mission
- occasion
- Asian
- person
- Russian
- passion
- mason
- basin
- derision
- pressure
- collision

### 5.2

- Could you give me your contact details?
- We couldn't find any record of a meeting on that date.
- The charity has enough funds to finance a number of new projects.
- We export about 45% of our production.
- We are starting the research in Liberia next month.
- After the earthquake, the transport system was out of operation for days.
- We need to increase the number of international contracts we get.
- We produce most of our own vegetables.

### 5.3

- A** I thought I remembered you saying you played squash.  
**B** That's right. Do you?
- A** Have you been to any of the Greek Islands?  
**B** Yes, I have. The one that stands out in my mind is Paphos.
- A** Imagine you'd known the price was going down. Would you still have bought?  
**B** Well, hindsight is a wonderful thing but I wasn't to know.
- A** Judging from your appearance I'd hazard a guess at thirty.  
**B** Very good! Thirty-one next birthday.
- A** I was under the impression you spoke French.  
**B** No, I don't, although I worked in Paris for a couple of months.
- A** I presume you have a degree.  
**B** Well, actually, I went to university but left after two years.

### 5.4

- I bet you it'll rain tomorrow just because it's the weekend.
- I was under the impression it was open on Mondays.
- I'd hazard a guess you work in marketing of some sort.
- I'm guessing you're a sports fan.
- I'm sure I remember my father telling me that joke.
- No doubt you'll be surprised but I am actually Canadian.
- Suppose you'd been born in Germany, how different would your life be?
- What stands out for me about the eighties is the music.
- Without a shadow of a doubt, the value of gold will continue to rise.

### 5.5

- He's not just any footballer ... he's the world's best footballer.
- Some countries simply copy, ... while other countries create.
- It's not just the money ... it's the time and the money.
- I don't know any jokes ... I don't know any good jokes anyway.
- The lesson wasn't just difficult ... it was difficult and boring.

### 5.6

**PIPPA** Hi, I'm Pippa. The best thing about my job is that no two days are the same. One day I might be called upon to give evidence at a trial, and the next be out and about in the city, investigating a crime. This job's definitely not for the fainthearted. Every call we get can lead us into a potentially dangerous situation. I do have colleagues who have suffered assaults, a couple of whom have been quite seriously injured, but we're well trained, and the knowledge that we're protecting the public makes that risk worth taking. I work a shift system, around 40 hours a week, but of course I can't just drop everything and go home if I'm in the middle of an investigation, so juggling my job with my responsibilities as a parent can be interesting, to say the least! I have to say, though, that the thing that really gets me down is the mountains of paperwork. It's important to keep records, but I think things have got out of hand in the public sector these days.

**ANGUS** Hi, I'm Angus. I work on an oil rig in the North Sea. It's absolutely massive. I like to tell people that it's like living on an island, but without the paradise! I've worked in the energy sector for most of my adult life, but I've only worked offshore for the last couple of years. My job involves repairing and maintaining drilling equipment. We're required to work in all weathers. It's tough and sometimes dangerous work; there have been some really high-profile disasters, of which we're all too well aware. But the hardest



thing of all is being away from my family for weeks at a time. It's well paid though, and I do get some satisfaction from knowing that I'm contributing a lot to the economy of my country; we supply almost 70% of the UK's oil, as well as being a major exporter.

**MARTINA** Hi, I'm Martina. Have you noticed how many more British strawberries and raspberries there are in the shops these days? In the past, they were mostly imported from countries like Spain, but today huge, plastic tunnels have made soft fruit an option for UK farmers. That's where I come in. I've been employed over the summer to help with the harvest. Well, the agency that found me the work called it employment; I call it exploitation! I knew that wages in the agricultural sector were low, but we're paid the minimum wage, and then out of that we're expected to pay for the horrible little caravans they call our accommodation. It's backbreaking work, and my boss is extremely strict; and sometimes rude and unpleasant. But the thing that annoys me most of all is that they only give us work when they want to, and we never get enough hours. I wanted to save up for my studies next year, but it's just impossible!

## Unit 6

### 6.1

- 1 Since June I've been working in Oxford and living in London.
- 2 I'll normally start work at 9 and have finished by 6.
- 3 I don't enjoy it but will do it for the next few months.
- 4 By the end of September I'm hoping to be moving.
- 5 In November I'll take some time off to visit my brother in Italy.

### 6.2

- 1 She was so disillusioned.
- 2 She was so disillusioned.
- 3 I was absolutely petrified.
- 4 I was absolutely petrified.
- 5 I felt extremely frustrated.
- 6 I felt extremely frustrated.
- 7 They were very protective.
- 8 They were very protective.
- 9 I'm really sorry.
- 10 I'm really sorry.

### 6.3

- 1 Thanks very much for your warm welcome. My focus topic today is regional development for the group with a particular emphasis on Latin America.
- 2 One thing is clear, we really need to have a larger presence in this region if we wish to increase our market share.
- 3 First and foremost, I would like to give you some statistics about the country which will put things into perspective.
- 4 It's absolutely obvious that with a market this size we need good distribution and that is one of the areas I would like to talk you through.
- 5 Moving on from distribution, let's now turn to finance and look at the numbers.
- 6 This table shows the population by age and area and I would like to take you through it in some detail.
- 7 So in conclusion, this is the region I feel we should concentrate on; more specifically, these two cities.
- 8 So to recap on what I've been saying. This is a great opportunity and I would like to offer my full support to this initiative.

### 6.4

- 1 Generally speaking, the average working week is 42 hours.
- 2 You get four weeks' paid holiday a year as a rule.
- 3 As a rule, I'm the last to leave the office.
- 4 In fact, in some countries you get no holiday during your first year.
- 5 I think I prefer the Swiss system on the whole.
- 6 I didn't really enjoy working in Germany, truth to tell.
- 7 Normally, I have two large meals a day.
- 8 It's a public holiday here tomorrow, actually.

### 6.5

**LEWIS** I've noticed that you've been getting a lot of your photos in the papers recently, Martha. You must be doing really well.

**MARTHA** I don't know, Lewis. The money's nice of course, but to be honest, I'm getting a bit disillusioned with the whole thing. We're being asked to poke our noses into people's private lives so much, and I'm not sure I want to do that any more.

**L** Really? I've always felt a bit jealous of your job; flying off to fabulous places to photograph celebrities doing their shopping, while I get commissioned to take gritty shots of refugee camps or earthquake zones.

**M** But at least your work is meaningful, Lewis. It's vital that people know what's going on in the world, and you're a witness to that. My stuff is just so superficial; who cares what designer handbag this or that supermodel is carrying? Not me, that's for sure. And I've been thinking about it all more and more since I had my daughter; all this obsession with fashion and physical appearance, it's not healthy, and I feel ashamed to be contributing to it.

**L** I do see what you mean, but I wouldn't recommend my job to you. I was in Pakistan last month when they had that earthquake, and I was absolutely terrified. Seeing all the horror and destruction affected me really badly. I couldn't sleep for days.

**M** I'm not surprised. It must have been incredibly traumatic. That's why I admire photographers like you. The most danger I have to face is when some celebrity catches me snooping round their house and sets the dogs on me! But seriously, I'm not saying I'd rather do your job. I don't have the courage, and it wouldn't really be fair on my daughter either. No, I've been thinking about changing careers completely, actually.

**L** Oh? Do you have something in mind?

**M** Well, I was moaning to my husband about how rubbish it is to be making a living out of invading other people's privacy and he said, 'Well what's the thing you like doing most?' And when I thought about it, it was obvious: acting. I've been doing amateur stuff for years, so I'm thinking about trying to get into a proper drama school. I know it's insecure, but I could always do a bit of wedding photography on the side.

**L** I think it sounds incredibly exciting.

**M** The thing is, I'm thirty now, and if I don't do it soon, I never will. It's easy to keep finding excuses not to do things, isn't it? But as you say, I'm selling lots of photographs at the moment, so I'll be reasonably financially secure for a while.

**L** In that case, I think you should definitely go for it. Wow, you're making me think. Perhaps it's time for a change for me too.

**M** Well, same question then: what do you like doing most?

**L** Um, watching Manchester United play football, probably. I don't think I can make a career out of that, though!

## Unit 7

### 7.1

**A** Hi, Peter. Good to see you again. What are you doing here? I thought you worked in the Birmingham office.

**B** I do, but I'm here for an interview. Account Executive.

**A** Wow. You should have told me. We could have met up last night.

**B** I had dinner with Frank. I couldn't have prepared for the interview without his help.

**A** So what are you going to tell them?

**B** The new system looks like a great improvement. We seem to be having difficulties getting paid so the new process should improve things.

**A** So what are your chances?

**B** Pretty good, I think. There's no way they could give it to an external candidate and there's even an outside chance I am the only applicant!

**A** Good luck, anyway. Seems like it's quite possible we'll be seeing more of each other.

### 7.2

- 1 The person I'd most like to thank is Charles.
- 2 The reason I'm here is to help you.
- 3 The one thing I cannot do is cook.
- 4 What went wrong was I lost my ticket and got fined.
- 5 The main reason I cycle to work is to save money.
- 6 The only thing I ask is that you try your best.
- 7 What will happen is someone will be waiting with your name on a sign.
- 8 What they proposed was impossible to deliver.

### 7.3

- A** So what do people think of this plan for a weekend ramble? Will it increase staff morale?
- B** Who came up with that idea?
- A** I did. Along with some of the other managers.
- B** So you think a twenty-kilometre hike will improve the atmosphere? What planet are you on? I've had it up to here with some of the recent suggestions.
- A** Excuse me? I think you are out of order there.
- B** I do apologise, but when will you understand that the staff want higher wages? That is all. Any other ideas dreamed up by you and your colleagues are just a waste of time.
- C** Steady on, John.
- B** Sorry, that wasn't very tactful of me. I had no right to take it out on you, but the staff are unhappy.
- A** We know they are. But people like you who, if you'll excuse me, have been here rather a long time, need to understand there are more ways to improve things than just paying people more.
- C** I think you are out of line there. Just because John and I have been here a long time doesn't mean we don't understand how to manage.
- A** Sorry. I guess I overreacted. Apologies all round. Now, where were we?

### 7.4

- 1 route
- 2 although
- 3 brought
- 4 dough
- 5 tough
- 6 bough
- 7 would
- 8 four
- 9 announce
- 10 thought
- 11 through
- 12 conscious
- 13 south
- 14 could
- 15 southern
- 16 cough

7.5

**INGRID** Carlo, have you heard that they're thinking of using robots to help elderly people look after themselves? I think it's absolutely terrible. Loneliness is already a huge problem for lots of them and this won't help at all. It's obvious that robots can never replace the intimacy of real human contact.

**CARLO** Well, from what I heard about it, they're not intended to replace human carers, but just to give people a bit more back-up when they need it. Things like reminding them when to take their medication or prompting them to eat or drink if they haven't for a while.

**I** Well, I don't know. I think it's heartbreaking to think of some lonely person being given instructions by a machine. A cup of tea and a hug would do them a lot more good.

**C** I know what you're saying, Ingrid, but services are already stretched to the limit. The point is, if robots could ease that pressure even by a small amount, it would free up more resources for just the kind of thing you're talking about.

**I** Hah! I admire your optimism, but I'm afraid I'm more cynical than you. I think that the government will just go for the quickest and easiest option every time. If they can replace expensive, unreliable humans with machines, they will! After all, robots don't go off sick or ask for a pay rise, do they? We could easily be facing a situation where there's even less personal care in the future.

**C** But a lot of the people who'd be using these robots don't actually live alone. And it would be less of a strain on the people they do live with if a robot could help them with some of the things they need to do. Imagine never being able to go out in case your husband or wife forgets to take their tablets. It'd be impossible to lead a normal life!

**I** I suppose so. But aren't they quite complicated to use? How do we know that the people they're meant to help will actually understand how to work them?

**C** Well, apparently there have been trials in the Netherlands, and they worked quite well. They've got touchscreens that're very simple to use. What's crucial is to programme them and train them appropriately, for example to recognise the user's voice. And nobody's being forced to use every facility a robot can offer; just the ones that are relevant to them.

**I** I still think it's a poor substitute for proper, personal care. We're hard-wired to need company, and we don't do well without it.

**C** Well there's some evidence that robots can actually help to reduce social exclusion by encouraging and reminding users to keep in contact with their friends and families.

**I** I'm not convinced. Although I guess I might like a robot who could do my cooking and ironing for me.

**C** Sadly, I don't think they'll be doing that any time soon!

## Unit 8

8.1

- 1 I didn't sleep a wink last night!
- 2 I usually sleep like a log.
- 3 I'm often fast asleep by 11.
- 4 I'm going to have a nap later.
- 5 I just lie there, wide awake.
- 6 Make sure you don't oversleep.

8.2

Three-step plan to a better life.

Are you showing your age? Do you have saggy skin, fine lines and wrinkles?

Are you prone to dry skin? Is your hair thinning and greying?

Adopt our plan to prevent those visible signs of ageing.

Step 1. Moisturise and have weekly facials to tighten and plump the skin.

Step 2. Eat a varied and balanced diet to lose weight and get yourself a glowing complexion.

Step 3. Help poor circulation and prevent heart trouble by doing regular cardiovascular exercise.

8.3

- 1 Take your eggs, three will do, and break them in a bowl.
- 2 Take a whisk, or a fork, and beat them.
- 3 Add some salt and pepper, just a little, and stir.
- 4 Take some hard cheese, around 30 grams, and grate it.
- 5 Melt some butter, about 10 grams, in a frying pan.
- 6 Pour the mix – the eggs – into the pan and cook for a minute or two.
- 7 Add the cheese and wait, probably a minute, until it melts. Serve immediately.

8.4

- A** Hello?
- B** Hi, I'm phoning about the car you're advertising on the website.
- A** Oh, great. Are you interested in buying it then?
- B** Yes, although it depends a bit on what we can do about the price.
- A** Well, it says 3,200 on the website, but I'd be prepared to accept 3,000.
- B** I'm afraid I can't go higher than 2,500.
- A** It's worth much more than that. You won't find a car like it cheaper anywhere else.
- B** OK, 2,800, but that's as high as I can go.
- A** Could you see your way to increasing that a little?
- B** Sorry, that's my final offer.
- A** I was kind of hoping for 2,900.
- B** Unfortunately I'm buying the car for a client and I'm not authorised to go any higher.
- A** OK. Are you free on Monday to come over and do the paperwork?
- B** Yes, that's fine.

8.5

- 1 I was thinking about a dessert.
- 2 I was thinking about a dessert.
- 3 You sound French to me.
- 4 You sound French to me.
- 5 I'm not sure if you were there last week.
- 6 I'm not sure if you were there last week.
- 7 I was considering a takeaway tonight.
- 8 I was considering a takeaway tonight.
- 9 I'm doing some work for, you know, Oxfam.
- 10 I'm doing some work for, you know, Oxfam.
- 11 We could go out at, say, ten.
- 12 We could go out at, say, ten.

8.6

**MARIA** Oh, hello, Ralf. I haven't seen you in a while. I hear you're going to be 70 next month. Are you planning a big celebration?

**RALF** You must be joking, Maria. What is there to celebrate? Wrinkles? Arthritis? False teeth?

**M** Oh, come on, Ralf, you're not doing that badly! If I were you, I'd be celebrating the fact that I'd made it this far, that I had a lovely, happy family, that I had plenty of leisure time and –

**R** Oh, don't start telling me to count my blessings! I've had enough of that from my wife. I just feel that old people are discriminated against all the time in our society. There's so much ageism; people seem to think that just because your hair's thinning that your brain cells are thinning too. Nobody takes you seriously anymore and I'm fed up with people talking to me as if I were a child.

**M** Well it's no use moaning about it. We need to show them that we still have a lot to contribute to society. Look at all the volunteering we do, for a start!

**R** Yes, of course we do, but are we appreciated? I don't think so. Exploited more like! Think about all the childcare we provide; my son and his wife both have to work, so we do a lot with the grandchildren. We have three of them to stay for two nights a week, and they're quite a handful,

I can tell you! Suppose we all said no, enough, we've raised our own children and now we want to relax; what would happen then? The country would grind to a halt.

**M** You're right about that. But surely your son is grateful for your help?

**R** Yes, to be fair I think he is, but I don't think that society as a whole values that sort of thing. It's all about youth and status these days; once you're over 60, you're on the rubbish heap.

**M** I think you're exaggerating wildly, but it's true that we're expected to keep trying to look young, as if it's somehow wrong to show your age. My friend Kathy, who's sixty-four, was telling me the other day that she's considering plastic surgery to get rid of the saggy skin round her neck. I couldn't believe my ears! Even if I had the money, I wouldn't spend it on that. I'd rather go on a cruise or something.

**R** I totally agree, but I can see why some people can't bear the idea of getting older, because it has such negative connotations: forgetful and confused, set in our ways, don't know how to use the Internet, won't stop talking about the old days; you know the sort of thing.

**M** I do know, Ralf, but if you don't mind me saying so, I think you're in danger of falling into a stereotype yourself.

**R** Oh? Which one?

**M** Grumpy old man!

## Unit 9

9.1

In the 1980s, the waterfront at Wellington, New Zealand's capital, had become an industrial wasteland right in the centre of the city. As shipping had modernised, a new container port had been built, leaving the old dockland area in need of regeneration. The city had a number of different ideas on how they might redevelop the area and they began with a design competition to encourage original and innovative thinking.

It was vital that the renovated waterfront would combine areas for work, leisure, tourism and events. It was also key to the success of the project that the area be restored to its position as a central hub for the city.

The whole project took around twenty years and it has completely rejuvenated the city. The waterfront hums now with street theatre, music and performance spaces, some created out of repurposed shipping containers. Repurposed buildings sit easily alongside brand-new structures. Restaurants and bars are full of a mix of professionals and tourists delighted to be in a city which has regained its position as one of the best urban tourism destinations in the world. Welcome back to Windy Wellington.

9.2

- 1 bungalow
- 2 cabin
- 3 detached
- 4 apartment
- 5 estate
- 6 housing
- 7 skyscraper
- 8 mansion
- 9 tasteless
- 10 nondescript
- 11 graceful
- 12 innovative
- 13 imposing
- 14 stunning
- 15 power

9.3

**TONY** Is that you, Sophie?

**SOPHIE** Yes, it is. How can I help?

**T** This is Tony Allen from GK Partners. I'm calling to express my utter disbelief.

**S** What seems to be the problem, Tony?

- T** How can I put this? I understand you are in talks with our main competitor.
- S** Well I'm not, but a colleague is.
- T** I'm absolutely lost for words.
- S** What can I say? I take full responsibility, but you mustn't overreact.
- T** This is beyond belief. I thought we had an agreement?
- S** Let's not jump to any conclusions. We are simply talking to them, that is all.
- T** But you have no right to work with both of us. What on earth happened to our confidentiality agreement?
- S** There's no reason to raise your voice. I'm sure we can find a solution.
- T** You'd better, otherwise there will be consequences.
- S** I understand where you're coming from. I will investigate and get straight back to you.

### ▶ 2.4

- 1 abseil
- 2 baguette
- 3 cello
- 4 mosquito

### ▶ 2.5

- BEN** Have you been down to the river recently, Eva? They've revamped the whole area. It looks really cool now.
- EVA** Oh yes, they've converted all those old warehouses, haven't they? I don't know, Ben, I guess it looks better, but it just feels to me as though they're cramming apartment blocks into every spare inch of the city these days.
- B** We need the housing though.
- E** Yes, but whether that's the kind of housing we need is another question. Where are the family homes for people like us, with kids? It's mostly studio flats in those blocks, for people who work in London. They don't really live there, they just sleep there.
- B** They need to sleep somewhere, Eva!
- E** I know they do, but it's a matter of degree. That sort of accommodation just isn't conducive to a stable population, where people get to know their neighbours and become integrated in the community. In my opinion, there should be more mixed housing so that we can all live together; single people, families, older people; everyone. But that's not so lucrative for the developers, is it? They want to squeeze every last penny of profit out of their land.
- B** Sure, but doesn't the council have some responsibility too? What on earth happened to urban planning?
- E** That's true, but the councils actually have less power than you might imagine. They can't turn down planning applications just because they don't like them; they have to have very strong legal reasons. They can't fight them as often as they'd like to because going to court is so expensive, and of course it's taxpayers' money they're spending when they do.
- B** So do you think it's time to stop building more homes here?
- E** No, I've got no objection to the building itself, but if I was in charge, I'd be doing it on some of those horrible fields around the outskirts of the city.
- B** What, on the green belt? I think that's a terrible idea! The green belt's really important to the quality of the air, and it would be awful to build over lovely fields and forests.
- E** Have you seen the green belt here? A lot of it's just muddy wasteland. But if you don't want to build on it, how about knocking down some of those enormous houses right next to it? Those people really make me mad; they'll protest till they're blue in the face if someone wants to build a house that will spoil their view, but you could fit twenty little houses like mine on the land their mansions take up.
- B** Wow, Eva, you're so passionate about this! You should stand for the council!

- E** No, we've got another plan actually.
- B** What's that?
- E** We've found this run-down old cottage in a little village near the coast. We're thinking of renovating it and moving there with the kids.
- B** That's exciting!
- E** Yes, it is. And you're welcome to come and visit, any time you get fed up with this crowded old city!

## Unit 10

### ▶ 10.1

I gave a presentation in Turkey last month and everything that could possibly go wrong went wrong. I should never have agreed to do it, particularly when they said there would be about a hundred in the audience, that's just too many. Anyway, I said yes and flew into Istanbul at about one in the afternoon for the presentation at four. The plane was on time, but I really regret not arriving the day before, particularly when you think what happened next. I was met at the airport, but there was so much traffic it took us nearly two hours to get to the venue. We arrived with half an hour to spare, whereupon my hosts, in true Turkish style, immediately offered us tea. If only I'd said no, I would have had more time to check everything. As it was, when we connected my laptop I noticed that none of the images were showing and that my notes didn't show on screen. If only I had printed them out! By this time we only had five minutes to go and that was when the technician arrived and he somehow got everything fixed in time. Unfortunately, people kept arriving and it was impossible to start on schedule. In fact, the room was actually far too small, but instead of closing the door they kept letting people in. I finally started half an hour late. A big part of me wishes I had never agreed but in fact the audience was so appreciative I'd probably do it again.

### ▶ 10.2

- 1 If only she had asked me ...
- 2 Had the weather been better ...
- 3 I should have realised ...
- 4 You might have told me ...
- 5 I really wish I'd been there.
- 6 He ought to have known ...
- 7 It's about time they ...
- 8 We should never have gone.

### ▶ 10.3

- 1 **A** Good luck with your driving test. I hope you pass this time!  
**B** Thanks, it would definitely be a case of third time lucky though, wouldn't it?
- 2 **A** Aren't you going to have a second go at becoming team leader?  
**B** Well, I'm not sure. I think I might be tempting fate if I tried again.
- 3 **A** Have you got your exam results yet?  
**B** No, but fingers crossed I've been successful this time.
- 4 **A** That restaurant you've booked looks really expensive.  
**B** Don't worry, I've taken out extra cash just to be on the safe side.
- 5 **A** I hear you're going skiing. Be careful you don't break anything.  
**B** Well, touch wood, I've been skiing for over ten years and never had an injury yet!

### ▶ 10.4

- 1 Acorns protect you from lightning strikes.
- 2 People claim that ladybirds bring good luck.
- 3 The four-leaf clover is a plant which brings good fortune.
- 4 This charm bracelet brings strength and happiness.
- 5 I have a rabbit's foot in my sports bag.

### ▶ 10.5

- A** So, thanks for coming, Anthony. We were very interested in your proposal.
- B** So perhaps you could start by ...
- C** Sorry, but could I have a glass of water?
- B** Of course. Here you are.
- A** Now as I was saying. We are very interested in your ideas and wanted to find out some more.
- C** Where ... ?
- A** Please, after you ...
- C** I was just going to ask – where would you like me to start?
- A** Well, I understand that you train people in making presentations.
- C** That's true, but before we go on can I just say that my main job is acting? I do a wide range of radio and TV shows. Theatre as well, obviously.
- B** Sorry to interrupt, but will we have seen you on TV?
- C** Possibly. Four or five years ago. Anyway, as I was saying, I work with politicians and business leaders to help them give more effective presentations.
- A & B** So how ...
- B** Sorry, you first.
- A** How do you train them?
- C** Well, we work a lot on posture, breathing, relaxation. Some voice drills and so on.
- A** Speaking of posture, is it an important part of the training?
- C** Yes, in fact we warm up with a lot of posture exercises which allow us to have better control over our bodies. It's a technique a lot of actors use.
- A** Thanks. Do go on.
- C** Where was I?

### ▶ 10.6

- 1 You can't give me a hand, can you?
- 2 It was a great film, wasn't it?
- 3 He's not available, is he?
- 4 That's your bag, isn't it?
- 5 That wasn't your phone, was it?
- 6 You can speak German, can't you?
- 7 That wasn't our flight, was it?
- 8 It won't hurt, will it?
- 9 Your boss is coming, isn't he?
- 10 It isn't time already, is it?

### ▶ 10.7

- LOUIS** Are you enjoying the conference, Christina?
- CHRISTINA** Well, so far not really, to be honest, Louis. I've seen some truly awful talks and I've got so much work to do back at the school, part of me wishes I hadn't come.
- L** That's a shame! I saw a couple of fantastic presentations this morning. The best one was a workshop demonstrating a new approach to reading tasks in the classroom; I'm going to try it with my students next week.
- C** Maybe I've just made bad choices about which sessions to attend then. This guy this morning was meant to be talking about managing challenging behaviour in the classroom, but for a start, he read his presentation out word for word, which is always a recipe for disaster. Honestly, wouldn't you think that someone at a teachers' conference would know better than that? And then he went into so much tedious detail that by the end of it all, quite apart from the fact that I was practically dropping off from boredom, I couldn't really tell you what he'd actually said.
- L** That sounds really poor. You really need to summarise your main points at the end, don't you?
- C** Yes, if he'd done that, I might have got more from it, I suppose. And then the other talk I went to was by this course book author who was totally self-obsessed, and her whole talk was about selling some idea to do with vocabulary learning that's



evidently the main focus of her new book. It was just a blatant attempt to sell more of her books. Also she kept making these throwaway remarks to her mates in the audience; little jokes that none of the rest of us could understand; it was awful.

- L** I really think you've been unlucky. The sessions I've attended have all been really well presented and relevant. I feel like I'm going to go back to work buzzing with new ideas.
- C** Well that's great! That's why we go to conferences, isn't it? So have you got anything in mind for tomorrow? You're obviously better at predicting what's going to be worth hearing.
- L** I thought maybe the thing by Selma Green on using digital media in the classroom. I've not heard her before, but she's reported to be an excellent speaker.
- C** Oh yes, I saw her at a conference in Milan last year, and she had the audience eating out of her hand. I was with a group of colleagues and we couldn't stop talking about her presentation all evening. There was so much food for thought there. Yes, I'll definitely join you for that one. And what about the slot after coffee? Do you have a recommendation for that?
- L** Well, as it happens, I do. It's this really interesting guy talking about his unusual views on teaching grammar. Well worth a listen.
- C** What's his name? Will I have heard of him?
- L** Oh, you've definitely heard of him. In fact, you're talking to him now!

# Answer key

## Unit 1

### 1A

#### 1

a 2 extremely 3 quite 4 clearly 5 apparently 6 widely 7 effectively  
8 unfortunately

b 2 Your English will improve rapidly if you listen to music and watch films.  
3 Lots of language schools opened in the seventies in England.  
4 You lived in Paris so presumably you speak French fluently.  
5 For adult learners, listening is usually the hardest skill.  
6 I almost never write down new vocabulary.

#### 2

a 2 ear 3 at 4 picked 5 struggled 6 accustomed 7 rusty 8 conversation

#### 3

a 2 dedication 3 Motivation 4 interaction 5 distractions 6 competence  
7 reluctance 8 interference

### 1B

#### 1

a 2 will have been studying 3 hadn't found 4 have tried  
5 have never written 6 has been revising  
b 2 'll have been 3 Have you ever had 4 moved 5 saw 6 've always enjoyed  
7 've applied 8 has got 9 'd only just arrived 10 've been  
11 'll have made

#### 2

a 2 ongoing 3 barely 4 way 5 increase 6 substantially 7 rapid 8 subtle  
9 shift 10 changes

#### 3

a 2 studying 3 tried 4 practising 5 working 6 revising

### 1C

#### 1

a 2 loads of 3 Give or take 4 Whatsisname 5 something to do with  
6 Somewhere in the region of 7 words to that effect

b 2 d 3 b 4 a 5 f 6 c

#### 2

a 1 green, believe  
2 instead, bread  
3 break, great  
4 wear, bear  
5 pier  
6 earn, learn

### 1D

#### 1

a True: 1, 2, 5; False: 3, 4, 6

b Direct: 3, 6, 7  
Softened: 2, 4, 5, 8

#### 2

a 2 I disagree. You've got a point about the price of transport, by the way.  
3 I'm in two minds about this. I'm not sure if you are right, or not.  
4 I don't quite get what the fuss is about. In my opinion, Edinburgh is cheap.  
5 You're spot on there. Listening is really tricky. Keep practising.  
6 I agree with the others up to a point but I think speaking is harder. Good luck!  
7 You are all missing the point. Learning English just takes time.  
8 I would go along with that. Good discussion, by the way.

#### 3

a Suggested answer

I am in two minds about this. It is interesting to watch lectures from different courses but it seems to me that if I cannot get feedback from the teachers or even ask questions, it is harder to actually learn.

You are spot on about the short clips, particularly for practical demonstrations of scientific or engineering concepts. But, that's nonsense about translating the pages. Most of the translation is automatic and doesn't always work properly. However, you've hit the nail on the head about learning for people in remote regions or those who cannot travel for other reasons.

Overall, I agree that there are a lot of opportunities for us online but I still think you are better off with a teacher.

## Reading and listening extension

#### 1

a a 3 b 5 c 1 d 4 e 6 f 2

b 2 speak several languages  
3 do not follow  
4 come out of  
5 over 100 years

c True: 1, 2, 6; False: 3, 7; Not enough information: 4, 5, 8

#### 2

a 3

b David: 1, 4  
Julia: 2, 6, 7, 9  
Neither: 3, 5, 8, 10

## Review and extension

#### 1

2 They were really hoping to stay with us  
3 she also knows Italian  
4 You can easily find a shop  
5 I recently met the teacher / Recently I met the teacher  
6 need  
7 limitations  
8 noticeable  
9 steadily  
10 substantial

#### 2

2 She can be very rude – I have to bite my tongue, to avoid an argument.  
3 When I was a child, my mother fought tooth and nail to get me the best education possible, and she succeeded!  
4 I love going shopping with my friend Sandra – she has a nose for finding bargains!  
5 I recently employed an accountant to manage my money. I'm so glad I did – he's a safe pair of hands.

## Unit 2

### 2A

#### 1

a 2 further 3 darker 4 considerably 5 the most 6 much 7 more  
8 significantly

#### 2

a 2 h 3 d 4 f 5 b 6 e 7 a 8 g

b 2 came 3 relate 4 bombarded 5 slipped 6 held 7 brought 8 went

#### 3

2 So did you manage to fit in with all those important people?  
3 Overall I think I did quite well actually.  
4 One man went on and on about the budget.  
5 It was a great day and I learned lots.

### 2B

## 1

- a** 2 arrive on 3 hoping to 4 will be 5 is due to 6 plan to take her  
7 won't see 8 will be going 9 might be 10 about to
- b** Definite: Tom's presentation, Sarah's graduation, Tom's Skype call  
Definitely not: trip to Texas  
Possible: meeting with Mario, break with Sarah, Mario attending conference,  
dinner with Antonia

## 2

- a** Across: 3 hurtle 5 crawl 6 stagger 7 limp  
Down: 2 soar 4 slide 5 creep
- b** 2 marched 3 zoomed 4 drifting 5 rushed 6 strolling

## 3

- a** 2 injury, limped 3 walk, strolled 4 Suddenly, drifting 5 hurry, rushed  
6 zoomed, great

## 2C

### 1

- a** 2 interests 3 high 4 get 5 want 6 possibility

- c** 2 e 3 d 4 c 5 b

### 2

- a** 2 No, she emailed them last month.  
3 No, everyone spoke German during the meeting.  
4 No, but the presenters spoke English.  
5 No, but I'll be going there for work.  
6 No, I think we'll be going to Greece.  
7 No, I think I'll be driving there.  
8 No, I'm doing a workshop in Berlin.

## 2D

### 1

- a** 3, 6

- b** 2 b 3 a 4 c 5 c 6 b

### 2

- a** 2 Even though 3 On the other hand 4 unlike 5 by comparison  
6 alternatively

### 3

- a** Suggested answer

I live in a village ten kilometres from the nearest town and the public transport links are limited. Despite repeated requests, our council has not really improved things over the last few years. For that reason I, and many others, use cars which leads to traffic congestion and also makes it more dangerous for cyclists. There are also a number of elderly people in the village who can neither drive nor cycle.

Even though the station is only three kilometres from the village, it is rarely used because trains only stop there once an hour. A better timetable would make the station more popular and reduce the CO<sub>2</sub> emissions from cars. By comparison, emissions from trains are about half as much per kilometre. Villagers would still have to drive to the station but the council might consider a cycle path, which would encourage cycling. Alternatively, I would recommend organising a bus service from the village to the station and also to the nearest commercial centre. This would allow the elderly to get into town more frequently.

I realise that all of these plans will cost money but nevertheless, I feel they are necessary.

## Reading and listening extension

### 1

- a** 3

- b** 2 c 3 a 4 a 5 b

- c** 2, 3, 5

### 2

- a** 1 smell 2 taste 3 uncle 4 doctor

- b** 2 isn't 3 does 4 didn't 5 is 6 hasn't 7 doesn't know 8 thinks

- c** 1 a, c, d, f  
2 a, b, d

## Review and extension

### 1

- 2 as much as 3 I was hanging around with them more and more  
4 more and more quickly 5 the most light 6 I'm going to try to explain / I'll try to explain 7 leaped/leapt 8 crept 9 slid 10 bombarding

### 2

- 2 A friend of mine has just turned down the chance to go on a three-week safari! I would jump at the chance to have a holiday like that!
- 3 When I saw my favourite band on stage for the first time, I felt a rush of excitement!
- 4 I'm terrified of heights, but I'm going to take the plunge and go on the biggest rollercoaster I can find.
- 5 There's a nice tapas restaurant nearby – I've never had tapas before but it looks good, so I don't mind giving it a whirl.

## Unit 3

### 3A

#### 1

- a** 2 Seldom 3 Never 4 did I hear them 5 did they start 6 No sooner  
7 did I ever think 8 can we really stop

- b** 2 Not once did I feel I was making a difference.  
3 No sooner had we arrived in New Orleans than we were helping kids to read.  
4 Not only did we help lots of people, we also made great friends.  
5 No way will I ever forget the things I saw there.  
6 Rarely do we get a chance to really help people.

#### 2

- a** 2 e 3 a 4 c 5 f 6 d

- b** 2 deprived 3 impoverished 4 destitute 5 within our means 6 disposable  
7 making ends meet 8 prosperity

#### 3

- a** Ooo: charity, poverty, destitute, relatives, everyone  
oOo: enrolment, requirement, improvement, nutritious  
ooO: volunteer

### 3B

#### 1

- a** 2 b 3 h 4 e 5 g 6 a 7 c 8 d

- b** 2 earning 3 had 4 had been 5 was doing 6 had 7 would  
8 would 9 was 10 would 11 struck 12 was to start

#### 2

- a** 2 e 3 d 4 h 5 a 6 f 7 b 8 g

- b** 2 rich 3 coastline 4 face 5 wooded 6 dense 7 empty 8 sand

#### 3

- a** /t/ pronounced: biggest egg, What a, can't ask, great in  
/t/ not pronounced: can't find, it's so, biggest fish, great cook

### 3C

#### 1

- a** 2 In a nutshell 3 In other words 4 to cut a long story short  
5 what I meant was

- c** 2 to cut a long story short 3 in other words / that is to say  
4 what I meant was 5 to put it another way 6 in other words / that is to say

#### 2

- a** 2 e 3 g 4 a 5 f 6 b 7 c 8 d

### 3D

#### 1

- a** True: 1, 3, 6; False: 4, 5; Not enough information: 2

- b** 2 by boat 3 cruise 4 traffic jams 5 buildings 6 negotiate

#### 2

- a** 2 freshly baked 3 stunning views 4 mouth-watering 5 heart-stopping  
6 value-for-money 7 breathtaking 8 highly recommended



**3****a** Suggested answer

Henley-on-Thames is a beautiful Oxfordshire town on the River Thames about sixty kilometres from London. With a population of around 10,000, it is an easy place to visit on foot. I arrived by train from London and the journey only took about an hour.

The White Fox was within walking distance of both the station and the town centre and we had stunning views of the river. Fortunately we were not there during the world-famous regatta, when every room in town is booked up.

The room was small but very clean and the staff were extremely friendly. Our only complaint was the low pressure in the shower but the receptionist was quick to change our room. We ate in the restaurant's modern dining room which was tastefully furnished in a contemporary style. The food was mouth-watering, all made from locally produced ingredients. It was also very good value for money!

After a breakfast of freshly baked bread and home-made jam, we had time to visit the sights. These included the two-hundred-year-old bridge, a seven-hundred-year-old inn and a stately home just outside the town in the rolling English countryside. We thoroughly enjoyed our stay.

## Reading and listening extension

**1**

- a** 1 The author loves his work because he is adventurous.  
2 Doing expedition medicine is very different from working in a hospital.  
3 The author thinks that all doctors would benefit from working on an expedition.

- b** 2 a 3 c 4 c 5 a 6 b

**2**

- a** 1 b 2 b

- b** 1 d 2 b 3 c 4 a

- c** True: 2, 5, 6, 8; False: 1, 7; Not enough information: 3, 4

## Review and extension

**1**

- 2 Not only were the staff 3 was going to notice / would notice  
4 should confidential documents be 5 when we needed  
6 something awful was going to happen 7 Never before have we received  
8 Only then will I 9 when the coach broke down 10 woodland  
11 moorland covers 12 rainforest

**2**

- 2 I found maths really difficult at school. I tried really hard, but it was an uphill struggle.  
3 My cat has been really ill, but the vet has told us that she is out of the woods. The kids will be really pleased!  
4 My husband is really stressed – he's swamped at the moment.  
5 My sister's really good at looking at a problem and seeing a solution – I just get bogged down.

## Unit 4

**4A****1**

- a** 2 Her recently published book, 'Staying Alive', is a complete A–Z of health and fitness.  
3 Getting people of all ages to eat and drink sensibly has become her life's work.  
4 Her rags-to-riches life story is living proof that dreams can come true.  
5 Her easy-to-follow keep-fit apps top sales charts all over the world.

- b** 2 that perfectly judged shot  
3 the climate change problem  
4 anything like a Thai green curry / something like a Thai green curry  
5 my uncle's life's work  
6 plenty to do

**2**

- a** 2 think it over 3 rational 4 gut instincts 5 on impulse  
6 subconsciously 7 spontaneous 8 think twice  
**b** 2 self-conscious 3 conscientious 4 sensitive 5 rational  
6 self-confident 7 money-conscious 8 sensible

**4B****1**

- a** 2 d 3 g 4 a 5 b 6 c 7 f 8 e

- b** 2 to pay 3 had it extended 4 to help 5 had it made 6 draw  
7 our mail forwarded 8 set up

**2**

- a** 2 reminds 3 a lasting memory 4 treasure 5 a vivid memory  
6 slipped 7 come to mind 8 painful memory

- b** 2 memory 3 comes 4 souvenirs 5 vague 6 recall 7 forget  
8 jog 9 remind

**3**

- a** 2 We always went on holiday to France.  
3 In the evening we would walk along the beach.  
4 My brothers put me in a rowing boat.  
5 I still have my photo album to jog my memory.

**4C****1**

- a** 2 No offence intended  
3 I see where you're coming from  
4 beg to differ  
5 With all due respect  
6 OK, I take your point  
7 In fact, if you don't mind me saying so

- c** 2 You're telling me.  
3 With all due respect, you've only just started.  
4 I do take your point but you're still quite new.  
5 If you don't mind me saying so, it's probably best to wait.  
6 You've hit the nail right on the head.

**2**

- a** 2 aloud 3 died 4 break 5 weak 6 queue 7 blue 8 cereal

**4D****1**

- a** True: 3, 5, 6, 8; False: 1, 2, 4, 7

- b** 2 He was born in Vicenza, Italy.  
3 He started speaking English when the family moved to England.  
4 He went to South Africa to attend school and play more rugby.  
5 He moved to France to play rugby for Perpignan.  
6 He played his first full match for Italy.  
7 He played for Italy against Scotland.

**2**

- a** Immediate: 2  
Short interval: 3, 4, 6  
Long interval: 5

**3**

- a** Suggested answer

I met Robin down by the River Thames. We sat on a bench watching barges pass slowly by. The sun was out and it didn't take long before he was chatting away about life touring as a guitarist. I wanted to know how he had become such an amazing musician. 'Well, I'm sure it's in the blood, since both my dad and my uncle are musicians – my uncle has played professionally all his life and is still performing and composing.' He seems quietly confident of his own ability but highlights some of the disadvantages of his chosen profession. On European or UK tours, there will be a show each day, which means travelling and practising as well as sound-checking every single day. 'Hotel rooms are fun at first but after a while you miss your own home,' he adds.

When I him how he got into music in the first place, his face lights up. 'There was always music at home, I've got two brothers and a sister and we all played lots of different instruments. We had different bands featuring combinations of family or friends. It wasn't until I was about fifteen though, that I realised I would like to have a career in music.' Having studied music at university, Robin got his first break replacing his uncle at a small festival in Norway. 'It was only when I played live with the band that I realised what a great feeling it can be.' Shortly after that, a chance meeting with a drummer led to an offer of work with another band, closely followed by a chance to accompany Hugh Jones on tour. And the rest, as they say, is history.

## Reading and listening extension

**1**

**a** 1 rational 2 mental 3 poor 4 useful 5 better

**b** a 3 b 7 c 1 d 6 e 2 f 5 g 4

**c** 2 c 3 a 4 c 5 b 6 b

**2**

**a** 2 twelve 3 cake 4 memory 5 music 6 brain 7 Australia 8 husband

**b** Yes: 2, 3, 4, 8

No: 5, 6, 7

## Review and extension

**1**

- 2 The group's first day
- 3 the number of personal computers
- 4 get the job done on time
- 5 means old people are living longer these days
- 6 rational
- 7 sensitive
- 8 self-confident
- 9 sensible
- 10 conscious

**2**

- 2 Thanks for letting me know that you enjoy role play – I'll bear that in mind next lesson.
- 3 If you don't agree with an action, you've got to speak your mind, otherwise things will never change.
- 4 I can't believe how angry my friend is with me. She hates dancing so it never crossed my mind to invite her to my party!
- 5 You should have told me if you wanted me to buy chocolate when I went shopping – I can't read your mind.

## Unit 5

**5A**

**1**

**a** 2 whose 3 where 4 all of whom 5 who 6 why 7 which  
8 the result of which

**b** 2 h 3 g 4 b 5 d 6 c 7 e 8 a

**2**

**a** 2 controlled 3 assault 4 community 5 solitary 6 life 7 psychiatric  
8 convicted 9 sentence 10 served

**b** 2 sentenced 3 serve 4 reduced 5 counselling 6 victims

**3**

**a** 1 person, mason, basin  
2 mission, Russian, passion, pressure  
3 occasion, Asian, derision, collision

**5B**

**1**

**a** 2 aren't really expected 3 was required 4 is called upon 5 is essential  
6 are vital 7 English is mandatory 8 must do 9 should be

**b** 2 expected 3 have to 4 mandatory 5 essential 6 you've got 7 vital  
8 requirement

**2**

**a** Across: 7 electronic 10 tourism 11 public 12 industrial 13 financial  
Down: 2 retail 3 hotel 4 energy 5 agricultural 6 construction 8 aviation  
9 private

**3**

**a** Oo: 2, 4  
oO: 3, 5, 6

**5C**

**1**

**a** 2 hazard 3 Presumably 4 stands 5 memory 6 impression

**b** 2 c 3 f 4 e 5 a 6 b

**d** Speculating: 2, 3, 4, 6, 7, 9  
Recalling: 5, 8

**2**

**a** 2 Some countries simply copy, ... while other countries create.  
3 It's not just the money ... it's the time and the money.  
4 I don't know any jokes ... I don't know any good jokes anyway.  
5 The lesson wasn't just difficult ... it was difficult and boring.

**5D**

**1**

**a** 2 sometimes 3 online profile 4 automatically 5 odd 6 read aloud  
7 uncomfortable for interviewees 8 cautious

**b** a 5 b 4 c 1 d 2 e 3

**2**

**a** 2 In addition 3 As well as 4 above 5 Besides 6 Moreover

**3**

**a** Suggested answer

It is fair to say that the job market today is difficult because there are fewer jobs, and more candidates for each good post. Furthermore, globalisation has meant that candidates can apply from a lot further away than was the case in the past. In this essay, I will outline what you need to do in terms of online presence to ensure you are as well prepared as possible on the job market.

The first thing you need to do is to keep your online profile up to date. Besides ensuring that all the information is in one place, it also means that potential employers might find you without your needing to apply. In addition to including professional and academic information, it is best to check the words you use because sophisticated search engines look for them when looking for candidates.

As well as keeping your online profile looking as professional as possible, it is also advisable to limit your social online presence, particularly if friends regularly tag you at parties. Furthermore, it is worth checking your preferences are set as privately as possible so you do not reveal too much publicly.

My final suggestion would be to comment and write on the Internet in a way which you feel is appropriate and in a way that you are happy for others to see. Besides comments and posts, this also refers to email and blogs.

Overall, I would say that an online presence is a must in the current job market, but it is clearly something you have to maintain regularly.

## Reading and listening extension

**1**

**a** 3

**b** 1, 3, 4, 5

**c** 2 eager 3 relieved 4 difficult 5 calmer 6 behaviour

**2**

**a** 1 a police officer 2 an engineer 3 a fruit picker

**b** 2 Pippa 3 Pippa 4 Angus 5 Martina 6 Angus, Martina  
7 Martina 8 Martina

**c** 2 Some 3 not easy 4 less 5 still has to 6 misses 7 is 8 doesn't work  
9 doesn't think 10 doesn't work

## Review and extension

**1**

- 2 the date on which
- 3 your email in which
- 4 the details of which
- 5 whoever finds my money
- 6 wherever they like
- 7 all of whom / who all
- 8 construction
- 9 sector
- 10 commit a crime
- 11 retail
- 12 manufacturing

**2**

- 2 I always know when my nephew is up to no good, because he suddenly goes quiet.  
 3 My neighbour never punishes her children. They get away with murder.  
 4 With children, you've got to lay down the law right from the start.  
 5 Ever since she was mugged, my auntie's been looking over her shoulder. She's worried it will happen again.

## Unit 6

### 6A

**1**

- a** 2 I've lived 3 I'm studying 4 been doing 5 Do you think 6 insist  
 7 be studying 8 Are you 9 I need 10 I'm looking 11 is recruiting

- b** 2 e 3 c 4 b 5 f 6 h 7 a 8 d

**2**

- a** 2 powerful 3 observant 4 iconic 5 humorous 6 bleak 7 elaborate  
 8 flawless

- b** 2 elaborate 3 gritty 4 playful 5 repetitive 6 powerful 7 iconic  
 8 meaningful

**3**

- a** 2 I'll normally start work at nine and have finished by six.  
 3 I don't enjoy it but will do it for the next few months.  
 4 By the end of September I'm hoping to be moving.  
 5 In November I'll take some time off to visit my brother in Italy.

### 6B

**1**

- a** 2 h 3 f 4 a 5 b 6 c 7 d 8 e

- b** 2 looking 3 waiting 4 Pausing 5 crackling 6 Brushing 7 frightened  
 8 Sensing 9 having considered 10 Having completed

**2**

- a** 2 e 3 f 4 h 5 a 6 g 7 d 8 b

- b** 2 ashamed 3 insecure 4 jealous 5 protective 6 satisfied  
 7 over-excited 8 frustrated

**3**

- a** 2 She was so disillusioned. 3 I was absolutely petrified.  
 4 I was absolutely petrified. 5 I felt extremely frustrated.  
 6 I felt extremely frustrated. 7 They were very protective.  
 8 They were very protective. 9 I'm really sorry. 10 I'm really sorry.

### 6C

**1**

- a** a 2, 9 b 3, 8 c (4), 5, 6, 12 d 7, 10 e 4, 11, (12)

- b** 1 emphasis 2 is clear 3 First and foremost, perspective  
 4 absolutely obvious, talk 5 Moving on, turn 6 table, take  
 7 in conclusion, specifically 8 recap

**2**

- a** 2 ↗ 3 ↗ 4 ↗ 5 ↗ 6 ↗ 7 ↗ 8 ↗

### 6D

**1**

- a** True: 2, 3, 5, 6, 8; False: 1, 4, 7

- b** a 7 b 2 c 6 d 4 e 5 f 3

**2**

- a** 2 I am writing 3 appeared 4 consider 5 position 6 good 7 completion  
 8 raised 9 trust 10 your full attention 11 Please find 12 Yours faithfully

**3**

- a** Suggested answer

Dear Sir or Madam

I am writing in reply to your advertisement posted in last week's issue. I am a keen cinemagoer with a passionate interest in films, and would be delighted to be considered for the position.

I am currently studying German and Drama at Leeds University and my dissertation is on the topic of The Treatment of Modern Literature in German Cinema. This has necessitated spending a lot of time not only watching but analysing German films, something I have thoroughly enjoyed.

My knowledge of international cinema is substantial and I am a regular reader of *Film Monthly*. During my last vacation, I was lucky enough to spend four weeks working on a film set on location in Yorkshire, which gave me a valuable insight into cinematography.

I am a competent writer and have already had a number of articles published on the Film Society website. Please find attached some examples.

The other reason for my interest is that I hope to embark on a career in journalism once I have graduated. Any opportunity to add to my writing portfolio would therefore be extremely welcome.

I trust you will give my application your consideration and I look forward to hearing from you in due course. Please find attached my curriculum vitae.

Yours faithfully

## Reading and listening extension

**1**

- a** 2

- b** a 4 b 6 c 2 d 1 e 7 f 5 g 3

- c** True: 1, 3, 6, 7; False: 2, 4; Not enough information: 5, 8

**2**

- a** 1 Lewis 2 Martha 3 earthquake 4 drama 5 thirty

- b** 2 a 3 c 4 b 5 a 6 b

## Review and extension

**1**

- 2 increased 3 Not having been 4 Having experienced it  
 5 not knowing where to go 6 get frustrated 7 make their neighbour jealous  
 8 I would be devastated 9 feel insecure 10 in a humorous way

**2**

- 2 I went to a wedding at the weekend and the bride's dress was bright green – I couldn't believe my eyes!  
 3 When I was a little girl my parents told me we were going on a plane to visit my grandparents. I was over the moon!  
 4 One of my colleagues tells jokes all the time, and they're not very funny ones. It really gets on my nerves.  
 5 I've told my friend I'll go to a dance class with her. I don't like dancing, but I'll grin and bear it if it makes her happy.

## Unit 7

### 7A

**1**

- a** 2 h 3 f 4 b 5 d 6 g 7 e 8 c

- b** 2 could have 3 couldn't have 4 looks like 5 We seem to be  
 6 no way 7 there's even an outside chance 8 quite possible

**2**

- a** 2 warm-hearted 3 heartwarming 4 half-hearted 5 hard-hearted  
 6 open-minded 7 narrow-minded 8 heartbreaking

- b** 2 d 3 g 4 e 5 c 6 b 7 a

### 7B

**1**

- a** 2 a 3 e 4 h 5 g 6 f 7 d 8 b

- b** 2 It was a former student of mine who first told me about it.  
 3 The very first time I went there was 2009.  
 4 What I absolutely love about it is the incredible atmosphere.  
 5 What is (just) amazing is (just) how friendly the locals are.  
 6 What happens is you go into a café and people just start talking to you.  
 7 To be honest, it's only when I'm there that I'm really happy.  
 8 What really annoys me is I've tried really hard but I can't get a job there.



**2**

- a** 2 collaboration 3 isolation 4 innovation 5 tolerant 6 perspectives  
7 self-awareness 8 optimism
- b** 2 distribution 3 materialism 4 selfishness 5 capitalism 6 ostracism

**3**

- a** 2 The reason I'm here is to help you.  
3 The one thing I cannot do is cook.  
4 What went wrong was I lost my ticket and got fined.  
5 The main reason I cycle to work is to save money.  
6 The only thing I ask is that you try your best.  
7 What will happen is someone will be waiting with your name on a sign.  
8 What they proposed was impossible to deliver.

**7C**

**1**

- a** a 4 c 2 d 3, 5
- b** 2 order 3 apologise 4 tactful 5 take 6 excuse 7 line 8 overreacted

**2**

- a** 1 would, could  
2 through  
3 bough, announce, south  
4 although, dough  
5 brought, four, thought  
6 tough, southern  
7 cough  
8 conscious

**7D**

**1**

- a** True: 1, 3, 6; False: 2, 4, 5
- b** 2 b 3 c 4 c 5 a 6 a

**2**

- a** 2 specifically 3 such as 4 especially 5 demonstrated 6 namely

**3**

- a** Suggested answer

The aim of this proposal is to outline some ideas for improving the way we are currently learning English. Feedback from classmates and our teacher suggests that there is one skill we would all like to improve, namely speaking. We all agree that we need to change the focus of our learning, specifically to prepare in the daytime outside class, so we can benefit more from our evening lessons with the teacher.

Successful lessons this term, such as the presentations project, worked well because they were well planned by the participants and based around topics we are familiar with but don't always discuss in English. Students were motivated by these classes, as demonstrated by the attendance that week, and this is proof that this is the direction we should take more often.

My first suggestion is to have one of our two lessons each week focused entirely on speaking, with content and themes chosen by the students, and the other one reserved for more traditional subjects, specifically grammar and vocabulary. Other skills, such as reading and listening, could be done at home at our own pace, and activities which require marking, such as essay-writing, could be submitted every two weeks. The class of 12 is a good size and we all are at advanced level, so I would also recommend more collaboration on writing tasks.

I am confident that this approach would be more motivating and make better use of the teacher and that the lessons would benefit from more student input. I am keen to discuss this proposal in more detail.

## Reading and listening extension

**1**

- a** 1 c 2 a 3 d 4 b
- b** True: 1, 2, 3, 8; False: 4, 5, 6, 7
- c** 4, 7

**2**

- a** 2, 4, 7, 8, 9
- b** 2 in addition to 3 sad 4 can barely cope with 5 doesn't believe  
6 difficult 7 speaks 8 doesn't think

## Review and extension

**1**

- 2 quite possible 3 are not likely 4 forgotten is the 5 amazing was that she  
6 heartbreaking 7 absent-minded 8 mouth-watering 9 loneliness  
10 innovations 11 intimacy 12 cold

**2**

- 2 self-aware 3 self-sacrificing 4 self-sufficient 5 self-centred

## Unit 8

**8A**

**1**

- a** 2 sleepwalking 3 to be 4 doing 5 walking 6 acting 7 to create  
8 to wake up 9 to talk 10 to need 11 moving
- b** 2 putting 3 do 4 decide 5 not having been given 6 to alter  
7 hearing 8 having waited 9 to meet 10 complaining

**2**

**a**

|                |                |   |                |                |   |   |   |   |   |
|----------------|----------------|---|----------------|----------------|---|---|---|---|---|
|                |                |   |                | <sup>1</sup> L | I | G | H | T |   |
|                | <sup>2</sup> T | U | R              |                | N |   |   |   |   |
| <sup>3</sup> O | V              | E | R              |                | S | L | E | E | P |
|                |                |   | <sup>4</sup> L |                | O | G |   |   |   |
| <sup>5</sup> D | R              | E | A              |                | M |   |   |   |   |
|                |                |   |                | <sup>6</sup> N | A | P |   |   |   |
|                |                |   |                | <sup>7</sup> W | I | D | E |   |   |
|                |                |   |                | <sup>8</sup> F | A | S | T |   |   |

- b** 2 log 3 fast 4 off 5 nap 6 light 7 off 8 wide 9 oversleep

**3**

- a** 2 sleep like a log  
3 fast asleep  
4 have a nap  
5 wide awake  
6 don't oversleep

**8B**

**1**

- a** 2 e 3 c 4 a 5 b 6 f
- b** 2 just in case 3 providing 4 Assuming 5 should 6 weren't  
7 on condition 8 Suppose

**2**

- a** 2 saggy 3 wrinkles 4 dry 5 thinning 6 ageing 7 Moisturise  
8 tighten 9 balanced 10 weight 11 glowing 12 circulation  
13 heart 14 cardiovascular
- b** 2 plastic 3 strengthening 4 toning 5 tightened 6 firmer 7 glow  
8 regular 9 balanced

**8C**

**1**

- a** 2 prepared 3 hoping 4 the question 5 say 6 offer 7 higher 8 way  
9 issue 10 flexible
- b** 2 I'm not in a position to accept anything more.  
3 The carpet is worth much more than that.  
4 Is that your final offer?  
5 Could you see your way to increasing that offer a little?  
6 I was hoping for a hotel room in the region of \$100 a night.

- c** Buying: 2, 5, 7, 9  
Selling: 3, 4, 6, 8

**2**

- a** Statement: 4, 6, 7, 10, 11  
Question: 2, 3, 5, 8, 9, 12

**3**

- a** 1 three will do 2 or a fork 3 just a little 4 around 30g 5 about 10g  
6 the eggs 7 probably a minute

**8D****1**

- a** 2 a 3 c 4 c 5 b 6 c  
**b** 2 chill out 3 old and new 4 worked there for a while  
5 organically produced 6 international

**2**

- a** 2 state-of-the-art 3 deep 4 lovingly 5 stunning 6 romantic

**3**

- a** Suggested answer

Fresh fish grilling on a barbecue? The sound of waves crashing onto a beach? Tales of pirates and smugglers from the olden days? If you like the sound of this, then head to our guesthouse on the cliffs near Weymouth.

For over four hundred years, we have been offering hospitality to weary travellers. In a stunning location high above the sea, we are uniquely placed to offer great walks, fascinating history and a wide range of sports activities.

Family-owned for the last one hundred years, the Red Manor is a homely guesthouse and a gastronomic experience all at the same time. Serving fresh fish and seafood, barbecued on the beach in good weather, we are loved by locals and visitors alike. Our recently renovated bedrooms with power showers and memory foam mattresses are spacious and all have panoramic sea views. Whatever the time of year, you will love what we have to offer, from roaring fires in winter to watching the gorgeous sunset in the summer.

Sounds tempting, doesn't it? Don't delay. Book today. Great value deals available now.

## Reading and listening extension

**1**

- a** 2 forced 3 hang 4 find 5 say 6 experiencing 7 use 8 accompany  
9 spend

- b** True: 1, 3, 4, 8; False: 5, 7; Not enough information: 2, 6

**2**

- a** 1 70 2 3 3 60 4 64

- b** 2 time to do what he wants 3 without payment 4 appreciates  
5 may decide 6 bad-tempered

- c** 2 c 3 a 4 c 5 b 6 b

## Review and extension

**1**

- 2 to be working 3 otherwise 4 If I had enough money I'd come  
5 If 6 it would take me ages / it'd take me ages  
7 ways of communicating / means of communication  
8 Being appreciated / Feeling appreciated 9 get 10 came out in  
11 preventing 12 saggy / wrinkly / less firm / wrinkled 13 showing

**2**

- 2 I've just started ballet classes. They're supposed to be for adult beginners, but I'm far and away the worst there!  
3 The doctor says the pain in my knee is from wear and tear so there's not much he can do.  
4 I didn't do much at the weekend. Just bits and pieces around the house, like vacuuming.  
5 My children argue all the time. I'm sick and tired of it.

## Unit 9

**9A****1**

- a** 2 myself 3 yourself 4 herself 5 himself 6 one another's 7 ourselves  
8 yourselves 9 themselves  
**b** 2 himself 3 each other 4 relaxing 5 by themselves 6 her  
7 each other 8 myself

**2**

- a** 2 regain 3 recreates 4 restore 5 regenerate / redevelop 6 rejuvenated  
7 regenerate / redevelop 8 renovated  
**b** 2 redeveloping 3 renovation 4 restore 5 rejuvenated 6 been revamped  
7 repurposed 8 has regained

**9B****1**

- a** 2 then Roma 3 never did 4 weren't 5 never 6 didn't

- b** 2 b 3 e 4 a 5 f 6 c

**2**

- a** 2 innovative 3 nondescript 4 over the top 5 tasteless 6 graceful  
7 out of place 8 imposing 9 stunning

- b** Across: 4 studio 6 bungalow 8 retail park 9 warehouse  
Down: 1 skyscraper 2 tower block 3 power station 5 mansion 7 cabin

**3**

- a** oO: detached, estate  
Oo: cabin, housing, mansion, tasteless, graceful, stunning, power  
oOo: apartment, imposing  
Ooo: skyscraper, nondescript  
Oooo: innovative

**9C****1**

- a** 2 absolutely 3 full 4 beyond 5 jump 6 right 7 on earth 8 raise  
9 consequences 10 investigate

- c** 2 I have every intention of investigating the matter.  
3 There's no reason to raise your voice.  
4 You owe me an explanation.  
5 I warn you there will be consequences.  
6 Words cannot express my utter disbelief.  
7 I'd like you to take full responsibility.  
8 You've failed to fulfil your responsibilities.

**2**

- a** 1 abseil, German 2 baguette, French 3 cello, Italian  
4 mosquito, Portuguese

**9D****1**

- a** 2 a 3 c 4 a 5 c 6 a

- b** True: 1, 3, 5; False: 2, 4, 6

**2**

- a** 2 because of this 3 Due to 4 As a result of 5 led to 6 therefore

**3**

- a** Suggested answer

My local town has a population of around 100,000 but this figure increases by 50% at different times of the year due to the number of students attending the university and the number of tourists visiting the city's attractions. Because of this, the transport system and the shops are seriously overcrowded. This has led to a decrease in revenue for the shops in the town centre compared with neighbouring towns. The town is therefore planning a redevelopment of the city centre to make it more accessible to pedestrians, less crowded and generally more environmentally friendly.

The first step will be to increase the number of parking spaces outside the ring-road and also the frequency of shuttle buses to the town centre on dedicated bus routes, thereby reducing the traffic. Traffic in the centre itself will be reduced by the construction of a 2 km tunnel where only buses will be allowed. Shoppers will therefore be dropped directly under the new shopping area. Private cars will only be able to drive into the centre on alternate days, which will further reduce traffic. The centre itself will benefit from a new outdoor area where shoppers can relax. This area will have a state-of-the-art roof which can open and close depending on the season.

The whole project will take two years to complete and there is always the danger that shoppers and tourists will avoid the town during this time, thus reducing revenue even more. There is also the possibility that they will stay away permanently following this period.

The project will rely on careful planning and local support and it is hoped that it will lead to a relaunch of the town as both a shopping and tourist destination.

## Reading and listening extension

1

a a2 b6 c4 d3 e1 f5

b 2a 3c 4b 5a 6b

c True: 3, 5; False: 1, 2, 4, 6

2

a 1

b Ben: 5

Eva: 2, 3, 8

Neither: 4, 7

## Review and extension

1

2 enjoyed themselves 3 talking to each other 4 Look after yourself  
5 because it was 6 graceful 7 tasteless 8 innovative 9 renovate 10 restoring

2

2 on 3 up 4 around 5 in

## Unit 10

### 10A

1

a True: 2, 5, 7, 8; False: 1, 3, 4, 6

b 2 had been 3 would have had 4 not printing 5 hadn't been  
6 have started 7 to have given 8 could have gone

2

a 2 Had the weather been better ... 3 I should have realised ...  
4 You might have told me ... 5 I really wish I'd been there.  
6 He ought to have known ... 7 It's about time they ...  
8 We should never have gone.

3

a 2a 3b 4e 5c

b 2 illustrated 3 on 4 demonstrated 5 presented 6 the finer details  
7 concluded 8 tribute 9 remarks

### 10B

1

a 2 claimed 3 been said 4 been proved 5 being generally viewed  
6 considered 7 is known 8 thought to 9 have originated  
10 been perceived

b 2 have thought 3 are 4 was 5 are known 6 is 7 have been shown  
8 said

2

a 2 fate 3 crossed 4 safe 5 wood

c 2 convinced 3 plausible 4 far-fetched 5 persuasive 6 dubious

3

a b5 c6 d6 e4

### 10C

1

a 2 as I was saying 3 after you 4 before we go on 5 Sorry to interrupt  
6 you first 7 Speaking of 8 Do go on

c **Take a turn:** Can I ask a quick question?; Sorry to interrupt, but ...;  
Speaking of X, ...

**Pass a turn:** After you.; Perhaps you could start by ...; You first.

**Signal that you want to continue:** Before we go on, ...; As I was saying, ...;  
Where was I?

2

a 2 ↘ 3 ↗ 4 ↘ 5 ↗ 6 ↘ 7 ↗ 8 ↗ 9 ↘ 10 ↗

## 10D

1

a 2, 3, 4, 8

b 2c 3c 4b 5a 6c 7b 8b

2

a 2 In *Far From the Madding Crowd*, independent and determined Bathsheba has to choose between three very different men.  
3 Realising that she is a rival bookstore owner, Tom Hanks's character in *You've Got Mail* doesn't reveal his identity to his online friend.  
4 Born in New York City, Scarlett Johansson has films in her blood – her grandfather was a screenwriter and director.  
5 Having lost everything, Scarlett O'Hara could be seen as a broken woman at the end of *Gone with the Wind*.  
6 *A Trip to the Moon*, produced in 1902, was one of the first colour films.

3

a Suggested answer

I recently saw a film called *Gone Girl*, which is based on the best-selling novel by Gillian Flynn. It is a very tense thriller with some quite shocking scenes, which some people will find too graphic.

It is essentially the story of a marriage told by both leading characters: the husband, Nick and the wife, Amy. Nick runs a bar in a small town, financed by his wife with money from her trust fund. As a child, her parents had published picture books with a character called 'Amazing Amy' based on her, and this is worth remembering as the story unwinds. Is the real Amy living out a story she has invented? At the start of the film, Amy is missing and, as in many films, the husband is the prime suspect. There is a lot to dislike about him, whereas she appears to be the perfect wife. The plot twists and turns and you are never really sure which of the two is telling the truth.

The ending of the film is a little disappointing but the picture of a marriage slowly falling apart is very well narrated. Tension is maintained throughout by a very good director, David Fincher. Both leading actors, Ben Affleck and Rosamund Pike, are superbly believable.

If you like gritty, psychological thrillers, you will thoroughly enjoy this movie. But don't go if you like happy endings.

## Reading and listening extension

1

a 2 doesn't take 3 unrealistic 4 sarcastic 5 impolite

b True: 1, 4, 7, 10; False: 2, 3, 5, 6, 8, 9

2

a 3, 4, 6, 7

b 2c 3a 4b 5c 6c

## Review and extension

1

2 Pelé is regarded as / People regard Pelé as  
3 It was announced that the price of oil would be / They announced that the price of oil would be  
4 they spoke  
5 ought  
6 have liked  
7 had known, would have  
8 convinced / sure  
9 plausible  
10 traditional  
11 upgraded  
12 presented

2

2 chances 3 lucky 4 chance 5 luck



## Video exercises

### Unit 1

**a** 2 c 3 a 4 a 5 a 6 a 7 b

**b** 2 an understanding of people in other countries 3 to practise their English  
4 advantages 5 Lauren 6 Lauren

**c** 2 d 3 e 4 b 5 c

### Unit 2

**a** 2 f 3 e 4 b 5 a 6 d

**b** 2 a 3 b 4 b 5 b

**c** 2 Graham 3 Adelaide 4 Laurence 5 Graham

### Unit 3

**a** 2 she has free time 3 in the countryside 4 likes the challenge of 5 hot  
6 buildings 7 food and cooking

**b** 2 c 3 b 4 a 5 b 6 a 7 b 8 c

**c** 2 f 3 e 4 c 5 a 6 b 7 d

### Unit 4

**a** 2 d 3 e 4 f 5 b 6 a 7 c

**b** 2 c 3 b 4 a 5 a 6 c 7 b

**c** 2 sometimes 3 initial 4 shouldn't 5 an instinctive 6 in favour

### Unit 5

**a** 2 b 3 c 4 a 5 a 6 b

**b** 2 certain people 3 location 4 workplace training 5 not enough jobs  
6 could do more

**c** 2 Stuart 3 Rachel 4 Anna 5 Rachel 6 Everyone

### Unit 6

**a** 2 disagree 3 at home 4 shares 5 to take 6 like  
7 keen photographers 8 on special occasions

**b** 2 e 3 c 4 b 5 a

**c** 2 a 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 c

### Unit 7

**a** 2 b 3 c 4 a 5 a 6 b

**b** 2 waiting 3 secretly 4 try different things 5 sociable 6 inward

**c** 2 c 3 d 4 b 5 a

### Unit 8

**a** 2 know 3 disagrees 4 pollution 5 will need 6 recovering from

**b** 2 a 3 c 4 b 5 c

**c** 2 d 3 a 4 e 5 b

### Unit 9

**a** 2 visitors 3 contradicts himself 4 increased 5 worsened 6 Alex

**b** 2 a 3 c 4 a 5 a 6 c 7 c

**c** 2 e 3 d 4 b 5 c

### Unit 10

**a** 2 b 3 e 4 a 5 c

**b** 2 know why things happen 3 wealthy 4 consult an expert 5 global  
6 similar

**c** 2 c 3 a 4 c 5 c 6 b

# Acknowledgements

The authors and publishers acknowledge the following sources of copyright material and are grateful for the permissions granted. While every effort has been made, it has not always been possible to identify the sources of all the material used, or to trace all copyright holders. If any omissions are brought to our notice, we will be happy to include the appropriate acknowledgements on reprinting and in the next update to the digital edition, as applicable.

Tommaso Allan for the quote on p.25. Reproduced with permission.

The publisher has used its best endeavours to ensure that the URLs for external websites referred to in this book are correct and active at the time of going to press. However, the publisher has no responsibility for the websites and can make no guarantee that a site will remain live or that the content is or will remain appropriate.

The publishers are grateful to the following for permission to reproduce copyright photographs and material:

Key: L = Left, C = Centre, R = Right, T = Top, B = Bottom.

p.4(CL): Getty Images/Image Source; p.4(CR): Shutterstock/Golden Pixels LLC; p.5(CL): Alamy/Tetra Images; p.6(T): Shutterstock/Kinga; p.7(TR): Shutterstock/Wong Sze Yuen; p.9(TL): Shutterstock/Antoniodiaz; p.10(CL): Shutterstock/Fedor Selivanov; p.10(TR): Alamy/Cavan Images; p.11(CR): Shutterstock/Konstantin Shishkin; p.12(TR): Getty Images/Thomas Barwick; p.14(BL): Shutterstock/Vanessa Nel; p.15(TL): Shutterstock/Racorn; p.16(CL): Alamy/Neil Cooper; p.17(BL): Shutterstock/William and Sons Photo; p.18(T): Alamy/MBI; p.19(TR): Alamy/Ayhan Altun; p.20(T): Shutterstock/Mariakraynova; p.21(TL): Shutterstock/Everett Historical;

p.22(TR): Getty Images/Altrendo Images; p.23(BR): Getty Images/Rigoulett Gilles/hemis.fr; p.24(TR): Shutterstock/Jeanette Dietl; p.25(TR): Getty Images/Jamie McDonald; p.26(TR): Shutterstock/Gwoeii; p.27(TL): Shutterstock/Daria Filimonova; p.29(TL): Getty Images/Francoise De Mulder; p.29(BL): Alamy/Arterra Picture Library; p.30(B): Shutterstock/EFesenko; p.32(TR): Shutterstock/Photographee.eu; p.33(TL): Shutterstock/iurii; p.34(TR): Agnieszka Kurzeja; p.34(BR): Getty Images/Massimiliano Fradici/EyeEm; p.35(TR): Getty Images/Multi-bits; p.36(TR): Shutterstock/Zurijeta; p.38(BR): Corbis/Reuters/Herwig Prammer; p.39(TL): Shutterstock/ChameleonsEye; p.40(BL): Shutterstock/Lizard; p.40(TR): Shutterstock/Jacek\_Kadaj; p.41(BL): Corbis/Dmitry Rukhlenko; p.42(TR): Shutterstock/Syda Productions; p.44(TR): Shutterstock/Bikeriderlondon; p.45(TL): Corbis/Reuters/Yuya Shino; p.46(TL): Shutterstock/Elena Stepanova; p.47(TL): Alamy/Olavs Silis; p.47(CR): Corbis/Aldo Gazzaniga/Splash News; p.48(TL): Corbis/John W. Gertz; p.49(BL): Corbis/James Balston/Arcaid; p.50(BL): Shutterstock/Greg Epperson; p.51(TL): Shutterstock/Monkey Business Images; p.52(TL): Alamy/Asiasselects; p.52(BR): Alamy/Rafael Ben-Ari; p.53(TL): Shutterstock/Lucy Clark; p.54(TR): Shutterstock/Marcos Mesa Sam Wordley; p.55(TR): Alamy/RosalreneBetancourt 3; p.56(TR): Shutterstock/Tusharkoley; p.59(TR): Shutterstock/Robynleigh; p.60(TR): Alamy/Hero Images Inc.; p.62(CR): Shutterstock/F9photos; p.63(TL): Shutterstock/Matej Kastelic.

Video stills by Rob Maidment and Sharp Focus Productions: p.3, 64, 67, 69.

Filming in King's College by kind permission of the Provost and Scholars of King's College, Cambridge.

Illustration by Kamae Design p.23; David Semple p.28, 46, 58, 59

